



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 06924408 9









A GUIDE
TO THE
ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE:

A GRAMMAR

After Erasmus Rask,

EXTRACTS IN PROSE AND VERSE,

WITH NOTES ETC. FOR THE USE OF LEARNERS,

AND

An Appendix.

BY

EDWARD JOHNSTON VERNON B.A.

MAGDALENE HALL.

Antiquam exquirite Matrem.

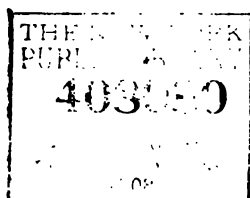


LONDON:

**JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,
4, OLD COMPTON STREET, SOHO SQUARE.**

MDCCCXLVI.

P.M.





P R E F A C E.

ANGLO-SAXON was spoken by our forefathers in England for more than five hundred years; from it have sprung the greater part of our local and family names, very many of our old, and almost all our provincial words and sayings, and fifteen twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman therefore altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue, while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with modern German.*

The present object is to furnish the learner, if it may be, with a cheaper, easier, more comprehensive, and not less trustworthy guide to this tongue than may hitherto have been within his reach.

The first six chapters are mainly abridged from the Grammar of the late Professor Rask of Copenhagen, as edited by Mr. Thorpe, whom the compiler has to thank for leave to make use of his praiseworthy labours, and for obliging answers to queries.

* See Thorpe's Advertisement to Rask's Grammar

Some alterations and additions seemed called for by the progress of the study since the publication of that work, whence its improved cultivation in this country must be dated. Illustrations from the kindred new Teutonic dialects German and Dutch, with some from Greek and Latin, old and provincial English &c. have taken the place of the Scandinavian* references as fitter for the English learner. A view, however narrow and imperfect, of languages more or less nearly akin, can hardly fail, it is hoped, to awaken in the understanding student, a wish to know something more of comparative philology, hitherto so unworthily slighted among ourselves, and so laboriously and skilfully worked out by the Germans.

The hyphen is used throughout to divide the parts of compound words from each other, as also prefixes, and when needful, case-endings and other terminations, from roots; in this as in other tongues, the beginner must accustom himself to parse not only every word in a phrase, but every syllable in a word.

Some rules for gender have been attempted, and a list of exceptions to the general rule of its agreement with the German, together with comparative tables of the cardinal numbers, and of the chief tenses, are added.

The accent, sometimes misplaced or left out by Rask, and too often altogether neglected by others, has been carefully attended to.

* Some acquaintance with Icelandic and the other old northern tongues, above all Gothic, which shows the originals of the A. S. inflections, quantity &c., is of course needful for a *perfect* knowledge of Anglo-Saxon.

The Syntax is in great part new; the examples mostly gathered from the compiler's own reading.

The Extracts in prose and verse are fitted by explanatory notes for use without a dictionary; an analysis of the narrative verse, partly shortened from Rask, and a literal version of the poetry, are also given. The purpose here being to teach pure Anglo-Saxon only, the selections are all from writers of a good age; one well grounded in the language in its perfect state, will not find it hard to bring down his knowledge of his native tongue, through Semi-Saxon, and old and middle English, to our own time.

The Appendix contains lists of words likely to be confounded by learners, together with a number of additional notes. For the length to which the latter have run some apology may be needed, but it seemed best not to lose the opportunity of bringing in, however irregularly, some matter which may be useful.

To Mr. J. M. Kemble, Editor of *Beowulf &c.*, who shares with Mr. Thorpe the honour of making his countrymen independent of foreigners for a right knowledge of their old national language and literature, sincere thanks are due for much very kind, and most valuable help and advice touching the accent, gender, and other hard and weighty points, on which opinions from such an authority cannot be too highly prized. Obliging hints, and the loan of scarce books from other quarters, must also be thankfully acknowledged.

The compiler, feeling what scanty justice has been done to these various and welcome aids, must add that

for those faults both of doing, and of leaving undone, which he cannot hope to have avoided, he alone has to answer. Should this imperfect attempt however, by making the speech of the Anglo-Saxons somewhat easier and more attractive than heretofore to their children, give any of these a better knowledge of the real structure, and true spirit, and a greater love for the power and worth of that tongue, which bids fair one day to overspread the whole earth, some time and labour will not have been spent in vain.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
.....	v
CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.	
Alphabet &c.	1
Accent	2
Pronunciation	3
Spelling	4
Range of Letters	5
Correspondence of do.	7
CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.	
Numbers	8
Declension	10
Simple Order, or Declension I.	12
Complex Order. Declension II. Class 1.	14
— — — — — 2.	14
— — — — — 3.	16
Complex Order. Declension III. Class 1.	17
— — — — — 2.	18
— — — — — 3.	19
CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES.	
Declension	20
Definite Declension	21
Indefinite Declension I.	22
— — — — — II.	23
Comparison	24
Regular do.	25

CHAPTER IV.—PRONOUNS.

	PAGE.
1. Personal	27
2. Possessive	29
3. Demonstrative	30
4. Interrogative	31
5. Indefinite	32
6. Cardinal Numbers	33
7. Ordinal do.	35

CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

1. Conjugation	37
2. Chief Tenses	38
3. Simple Order, or Conjugation I.	39
4. Conjugation I. Class 1.	41
5. — — — 2.	42
6. — — — 3.	45
7. Complex Order	46
8. Conjugation II. Class 1.	48
9. — — — 2.	50
10. — — — 3.	53
11. Conjugation III.	54
12. Conjugation III. Class 1.	55
13. — — — 2.	58
14. — — — 3.	59
15. Anomalous Verbs	60
16. Auxiliaries &c.	62

CHAPTER VI.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

1. Prefixes	63
2. Nominal Terminations	65
3. Adjectival do.	67
4. Verbal do.	68
5. Particles	69
6. Composition	71

CONTENTS.

xi

CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX.

	PAGE.
1. Syntax	73
2. Syntax of Nouns	74
3. — — Adjectives	76
4. — — Verbs	78
5. — — Prepositions	87
6. — — Conjunctions	92
7. — — Interjections	96

CHAPTER VIII.—PROSE EXTRACTS.

1. S. Matthew, XII. 1—13.	98
2. S. Mark, VI. 32.	100
3. S. Luke, XX. 9—25.	104
4. S. John, VII. 14—28.	107
5. Genesis, XLV.	109
6. Exodus, XXIII.	113
7. Saxon Chronicle	117
8. Apollonius	121
9. Boëthius, XVII., XXXIV. 10.	129

CHAPTER IX.—VERSE EXTRACTS.

1. Narrative Verse	135
2. Boëthius, Metre XII.	141
3. Cædmon, parts of Cant. II. and XVI.	145
4. Beowulf, parts of Cant. V., XXII., XXVII.	153

APPENDIX.

1. Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning	162
2. Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning	167
3. Other words likely to be confounded by learners	174
4. Additional Notes	180

ABBREVIATIONS &c.

A. S. Anglo-Saxon.

Comp. compare.

D. Dutch.

F. French.

G. German.

Goth. Gothic.

Gr. Greek.

L. Latin.

lit. literally.

O. old English in general

P. provincial.

S. Scottish, the ancient English dialect of the Lowlands of Scotland, and part of the north of England.

Numbers, applied to a noun, denote the declension and class; to a verb, the conjugation and class; to an adjective, the indefinite declension.

GUIDE


















TO THE

ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE.

CHAPTER I.

SECT. I.—*The Alphabet, &c.*

The A. S. letters are 24, viz.

A	a	[
Æ	æ	[
B	b	
C	c	[
D	d	[
E	e	[
F	f	[
G	g	[ 
H	h	[ 
I	i	
L	l	
M	m	[
N	n	
O	o	
P	p	
R	r	[
S	s	[
T	t	[
U	u	
W	w	[  
	x	
Y	y	
	þ	þ
	ð	ð

The characters between brackets were written by the Anglo-Saxons, but being for the most part mere corruptions of the Roman forms are now seldom printed.

In later times *k* was used for *c*; *v* and *z* occur in foreign names only. The abbreviations *ȝ* for *and*, *þ* for *þæt*, *the*, *that*, and others were in use; in general — shows that *m* or *n* is left out.

II.—Accent.

The accent (') over a vowel shows it to be long. The A. S. accented vowels are mostly long by nature; as, *lár lore* (G. *lehre*), *bær bier* (G. *bahre*), *grén green* (G. *grün*), *wíd wide* (G. *weit*), *góð good* (G. *gut*), *rúm room, space* (G. *raum*), *fýr fire* (G. *feuer*). Some have become long by contraction, *g*, *h*, *ng*, or *n*, being left out; as, *smeagan, smeán to consider*, *sleahan, sleán to slay*, *gangan, gán to go*, *fangan, fón to take*; in *fíf five*, *tóð tooth*, *múd mouth*, and the like, the kindred tongues show the omitted *n*; as, *πεντε*, L. *quinque*, G. *fünf*; *ὀ-δους, ὀ-δοντ-ος*, L. *dens*,⁽¹⁾ G. *zahn*; G. *mund*: a few from the omission of a vowel; as, *tae, tá toe*. From the examples above and below, it will be seen that in English a long or double vowel, and in German a long or double vowel, or diphthong, commonly answers to an A. S. long or accented vowel, while short vowels in general correspond in like manner. The accent serves at the same time, though never used for that purpose merely, to distinguish many words of like spelling but different meaning and sound; as, *ac but*, *ác oak*; *mæst mast*, *mæst most*; *wende turned*, *went*, *wénde weened*; *is is*, *ís ice*; *for for*, *fór journey*; *ful full*.

(¹) In A. S. as in Greek, *ns* does not occur in the same syllable.

fúl *foul*; hyrde *herd, keeper*, hýrde *heard*.⁽²⁾ Without due attention therefore to the accent, A. S. cannot be rightly written, pronounced, nor understood.⁽³⁾

III.—Pronunciation.

The pronunciation is as follows:—

a has the sound of our *a* in *ah*; F. &c. short *a*.

á is longer and broader, like G. &c. long *a*, approaching our *au* and *aw*.

au and aw sound nearly like *ow* in *now*, but more open, like G. and Italian *au*.

æ is pronounced like *a* in *glad*.

æ nearly as *a* in *dare*; G. *eh*; F. close *é*.

e sounds like *e* in *send*, *rather*, when thus placed; before a consonant followed by a vowel it resembles the *ea* in *bear*, but is shorter, like F. open *è*. Before a or o it sounds as *y*; at the end of a syllable it is very lightly sounded, like the F. unaccented *e*, or the G. *e* final.

é is pronounced like æ.

i and y answer to *i* in *dim*.

í before another vowel to *y*.

í an *ý* to *ee* in *deem*.

o to short *o* in *not*; F. open *o*.

ó to long *o* in *note*; F. close *ô*.

ow is sounded as *ow* in *now*.

(2) Comp. G. *mast*, *meist*; *wandte*, *wähnte*; *ist*, *eis*; *für*, *fuhr*; *voll*, *faul*; *hirt*, *hörte*.

(3) The more advanced student will find comparison with the Gothic and other ancient dialects the only sure guide to the A. S. quantity.

u as *u* in *full*.

ú as *oo* in *fool*.

The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:—

c is always hard like *k*; *cw* stands for *qu*, which was however used in later times.

f between two vowels, or at the end of a syllable, sounds like *v*.

g is never soft; when placed however between two of the vowels æ, e, i, or y, or at the beginning of a syllable before e or i, followed by another vowel, it has the sound of *y*.⁽¹⁾

cg is usually written for *gg*.

h is always strongly aspirated; at the end of a syllable or before a hard consonant it is guttural, like the G. *ch*, the S. *ch* in *loch*, and the Irish *gh* in *lough*.

hw answers to our *wh*; h occurs also before *l*, *n* and *r*.

w sometimes, as in E., stands before *r*; likewise before *l*.

þ (*tha*) is our hard *th*, as in *thing*.

ð (*eth*) our soft *th*, as in *other*.

þ usually begins, ð ends a syllable, but they were and are often confounded.

IV.—*Spelling.*

The A. S. spelling was very variable; the following are the commonest changes:—

¹ It is likely that *g* before *e* or *i*, and (like *h*) at the end of a syllable, was guttural, as it often is in German, and always in Dutch.

- á — æ and æ — á; þám, þæm; þære, þære.
 a — ea; waldan, wealdan *to wield, rule*.
 a — o and o — a; man, mon⁽²⁾ *man*; on, an *on*.
 ea — e and e — a; ceaster, cester⁽³⁾ *town*; fela,
 feala *many*; eá — é; teáh, téh *drew*.
 i — y, eo; hit, hyt *it*: him, heom *them*.
 í — ý, íe, eó; hí, hý, hie, heó *they*.
 eo — u, y, e; sweord, swurd *sword*; seolf, sylf,
 self *self*.
 eó — ú, ý; sweótol, swútol, swýtol *manifest*.
 g — h; sorg, sorh *care, sorrow*.
 , ng, nc, nge; sang, sanc, sange *song*: n and g
 are often transposed, &c.; þegen, þegn, þeng, þen
servant, thane: g is sometimes added or cast off at the
 end of a word; as, hwý, hwýg *why?* hefig, hefi
heavy: it is often left out before d or ð; mægen,
 mæden *maiden*, mægð, mæð *tribe*.
 cs, sc, hs, x; ácsian, áscian, áhsian, áxian *to*
ask (ax).⁽⁴⁾

V.—Change of Letters.

Other changes of letters take place in inflection and derivation; the German synonyms often undergo the like, the English sometimes.

a is changed into æ, and *vice versa*; grafan *to grave*, (G. graben); þú græfst *thou gravest*, (G. du gräbst);

⁽²⁾ P. *mon* for *man*, *lang* for *long*, and the like.

⁽³⁾ L. *castra*; hence *Chester*, *-cester*, &c. in local names.

⁽⁴⁾ See also nouns II. 2., and irregular comparison.

bæð *bath*, (G. bad); baðu *baths* (G. bäder.)⁽¹⁾

a into e; man, *man* (G. mann); men⁽²⁾ *men* (G. männer).

á into é; hál *hale*, *whole*, ge-hælan *to heal*.

ea into e or y; neah *nigh*, nehst nyhst *nighest*, *next*.

e, o, eo, u into i or y; ren *rain*, rinan *to rain*; storm *storm* (G. sturm); styrman *to storm* (G. stürmen); weorc *work* (G. werk), wyrcan *to work* (G. wirken); hunger *hunger*, hyngrian *to hunger*.

eá, eó, ú, into ý; leás *loose*, (G. los); a-lýsan *to re-lease* (G. er-lösen); neód *need* (G. noth); nýðan *to force* (G. nöthigen); scrúd *shroud*, scrýðan *to shroud*.

ó into é; dóm *doom*, déman *to deem*, *doom*.

bb into f; a-hebban *to exalt*, a-hafen *exalted* ⁽⁴⁾.

c and cc into h; sécan *to seek*, ic sóhte *I sought*; feccan *to fetch*, (ge-)freht *fretcht* ⁽⁵⁾.

g into h and *vice versa*; wrígan *to cover*, ic wráh *I covered*; beorh *mountain*, plur. beorgas⁽⁶⁾.

s into r⁽⁷⁾; freósan *to freeze*, (ge-)frozen *frozen*.

ð into d⁽⁸⁾; sníðan *to cut* (G. schneiden), sniden *cut* (G. ge-schnitten).

Several other changes take place in the formation of imperfects I. 3. and complex; likewise in nouns II. 2., III. 1. 3. and in adjectives.

(1) See Verbs II. 3., and Nouns III. 1.

(2) See Nouns III. 2.

(3) See irregular comparison.

(4) See Verbs II. 3.

(5) See Verbs I. 2, 3.

(6) See Verbs III. 1, 2. Nouns II. 2.

(7) See Verbs III. 3.

(8) See Verbs II. 1, and III. 2.

VI.—*Correspondence of Letters.*

Attention to the correspondence of A. S. with English and German letters helps not only to recognise words already known in a kindred tongue, but to settle their derivation, spelling, and quantity. Thus—

á answers to E. long o; G. ei, i. e; bān⁽⁹⁾ *bone*, G. bein; máre⁽¹⁰⁾ *more, greater*, G. mehr.

eá to E. i. e; G. i. o, a, au: streám *stream*, G. strom; sceáp *sheep*, G. schaf; ge-leáfa *be-lief*, G. g-laube.

ea to E. short a, i. o; G. s. a: scearp *sharp*, G. scharf; ceald *cold*, G. kalt.

æ to E. and G. a, e: gæst *guest*, G. gast; fæst *fast*, G. fest.

é to E. i. e, a, o; G. i. a, ei: séd *seed*, G. saat; hær *hair*, G. haar; mæst⁽¹¹⁾ *most*, G. meist.

é to E. i. e; G. i. ü, ä: céne *bold, keen*, G. kühn; wénan *to ween, imagine*, G. wännen.

í to E. i. i; G. ei: síde *side*, G. seite.

eo to E. a, o, u, e; G. e, ie: deorc *dark*, sweord *sword*, G. schwert; ceorl *churl*, G. kerl; feoll *fell*, G. fiel.

* ó to E. oo; G. i. u: flór *floor*, G. flur.

eó, eów to E. i. e; G. i. ie, eu: deóp *deep*, G. tief; deor *dear*, G. theuer; cneów *knee*, G. knie.

ú to E. ou, ow, oo; G. i. au, u: mús *mouse*, G. maus; cú *cow*, G. kuh; rúm *room, space*, G. raum.

(9) S. bans.

(10) S. mair.

(11) S. maist.

ý to E. l. i, e; G. l. eu, an, ö: fýr *fire*, G. feuer; brýd *bride*, G. braut; hýran *to hear*, G. hören.

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. ch, k: cyle *chill*, G. kühle; stician *to stick*, G. stechen.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G. strecken; liccian *to lick*, G. lecken.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. schild; disc *dish*, *table*, G. tisch; tusc *tusk*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear *year*, G. jahr; girstan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. frost: bridd (*young*) *bird*; flacse *flash*, G. flasche.

CHAPTER II.

I.—Nouns. Gender.

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter: { wíf G. weib *woman, wife*.
 { cild G. kind *child*.

Masculine: mona G. mond *moon*.

Feminine: sunne G. sonne *sun*.

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár	G. ähre	(f.)	<i>ear of corn</i> .
— fæsten	G. feste	(f.)	<i>fastness</i> .
— fyðer	G. feder	(f.)	<i>feather, wing</i> .

Neut. mót	G. muth	(m.)	<i>mind, mood.</i>
— twig	G. zweig	(m.)	<i>twig.</i>
— wæpen	G. waffe	(f.)	<i>weapon.</i>
— wésten	G. wüste	(f.)	<i>waste, desert.</i>
— wín ⁽¹⁾	G. wein	(m.)	<i>wine.</i>
Masc. cræft	G. kraft	(f.)	<i>power, craft, art.</i>
— ende	G. ende	(n.)	<i>end.</i>
— feld	G. feld	(n.)	<i>field.</i>
— here	G. heer	(n.)	<i>army.</i>
— lust	G. lust	(f.)	<i>lust, pleasure.</i>
— mere ⁽²⁾	G. meer	(n.)	<i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem. bók	G. buch	(n.)	<i>book.</i>
— hǣlu ⁽³⁾	G. heil	(m.)	<i>health, salvation.</i>
— heorte ⁽⁴⁾	G. herz	(n.)	<i>heart.</i>
— ge-sýhð	G. ge-sicht	(n.)	<i>sight.</i>
— turf	G. torf	(n.)	<i>turf.</i>
— wiht	G. wicht	(m.)	<i>wight, being.</i>

Moreover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and -scipe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flód⁽⁵⁾ *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sæ *sea* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

(¹) Οἶν-ος masc. L. vin-um, neut.

(²) L. mare, neut.

(³) L. sal-us, fem.

(⁴) Καρδ-ια fem. L. cor, neut.

(⁵) G. *fluth* fem.; *see* masc. and fem.; *band* neut. and masc.

ý to E. l. i, e; G. l. eu, an, ö: fýr *fire*, G. feuer; brýd *bride*, G. braut; hýran *to hear*, G. hören.

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. ch, k: cyle *chill*, G. kühle; stician *to stick*, G. stechen.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G. strecken; liccian *to lick*, G. lecken.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. schild; disc *dish*, *table*, G. tisch; tusc *tusk*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear *year*, G. jahr; girstan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. frost; bridd (*young*) *bird*; flacse *flash*, G. flasche.

CHAPTER II.

I.—Nouns. Gender.

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter:	{ wíf	G. weib <i>woman</i> , <i>wife</i> .
	{ cild	G. kind <i>child</i> .
Masculine:	mona	G. mond <i>moon</i> .
Feminine:	sunne	G. sonne <i>sun</i> .

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár	G. ähre	(f.) <i>ear of corn</i> .
— fæsten	G. feste	(f.) <i>fastness</i> .
— fyðer	G. feder	(f.) <i>feather, wing</i> .

Neut. mód	G. muth	(m.)	<i>mind, mood.</i>
— twig	G. zweig	(m.)	<i>twig.</i>
— wæpen	G. waffe	(f.)	<i>weapon.</i>
— wésten	G. wüste	(f.)	<i>waste, desert.</i>
— wín ⁽¹⁾	G. wein	(m.)	<i>wine.</i>
Masc. cræft	G. kraft	(f.)	<i>power, craft, art.</i>
— ende	G. ende	(n.)	<i>end.</i>
— feld	G. feld	(n.)	<i>field.</i>
— here	G. heer	(n.)	<i>army.</i>
— lust	G. lust	(f.)	<i>lust, pleasure.</i>
— mere ⁽²⁾	G. meer	(n.)	<i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem. bók	G. buch	(n.)	<i>book.</i>
— hælu ⁽³⁾	G. heil	(m.)	<i>health, salvation.</i>
— heorte ⁽⁴⁾	G. herz	(n.)	<i>heart.</i>
— ge-sýhð	G. ge-sicht	(n.)	<i>sight.</i>
— turf	G. torf	(n.)	<i>turf.</i>
— wiht	G. wicht	(m.)	<i>wight, being.</i>

Moreover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and -scipe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flóð⁽⁵⁾ *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sæ *sea* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

(¹) Οἶν-ος masc. L. vin-um, neut.

(²) L. mare, neut.

(³) L. sal-us, fem.

(⁴) Καρδ-ια fem. L. cor, neut.

(⁵) G. fluth fem.; see masc. and fem.; band neut. and masc.

FURTHER RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Nouns ending in -tl, -ed, -incle, and diminutives in -en; likewise all having the nominative and accusative alike in both numbers are neuter.

II. Nouns in -a, -m, -ls, -ađ, -ođ, -e (from verbs) and -ling; likewise all forming the genitive singular in -a, or the nominative plural in -as are masculine.

III. Nouns in -æđ, -uđ, -đ (after a consonant) -eo, -u (of quality from adjectives) -e (from adjectives) -ung, and -leást are feminine.

IV. The gender of compound words depends on that of the last part; thus wíf-man *woman* is masculine. ⁽¹⁾

II.—Declension.

Nouns are divided into two Orders, the Simple and the Complex; ⁽²⁾ the former having one Declension of three Classes for the three Genders, the latter two Declensions of three Classes each ⁽³⁾.

The Simple Order, answering to the Greek and Latin pure nouns, contains those ending in an essential vowel; viz. -e in the neuter, -a in the masculine, and -e in the feminine. The Complex Order, answering to the Gr. and L. impure nouns, comprises all ending in a consonant, together with some in an unessential -e or -u.

⁽¹⁾ By the same rule G. frauen-zimmer *female* is neut.; manns-person *man* fem.

⁽²⁾ In Grimm's system Simple Nouns are called weak; Complex, strong.

⁽³⁾ For the grounds of this division, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 26—30.

Table of the Inflection of Nouns.

SIMPLE ORDER.

DECLENSION I.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	-e	-a	-e
Accus. (*)	-e	-an	-an
Abl. & Dat.	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	-an	-an	-an

PLURAL.

Nom. & Acc.	-an
Abl. & Dat.	-um
Gen.	-ena

COMPLEX ORDER.

DECLENSION II.

DECLENSION III.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	—	— (-e)	—	— (-e)	-u	-u
Accus.	—	— (-e)	-e	— (-e)	-u	-e
A. & D.	-e	-e	-e	-e	-a	-e
Gen.	-es	-es	-e	-es	-a	-e
	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N. & A.	—	-as	-a	-u	-a	-a
A. & D.	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um
Gen.	-a	-a	-a(-ena)	-a	-a	-a(-ena)

(*) On this arrangement see Rask, Preface p. 54.

RULES FOR DECLENSION.

I. All Nouns have the nominative and accusative alike in the plural.

II. All Nouns form the ablative and dative plural in -um, often changed to -on, and sometimes again to -an.

III. The ablative and dative are always alike in each number.

IV. Neuters, as in Greek, Latin, and German, have the nominative and accusative alike in each number.

V. Feminines vary the nominative and accusative singular; but form the ablative, dative, and genitive singular alike.

VI. The Simple Order forms its genitive plural in -ena, the Complex in -a. ⁽¹⁾

III.—*Simple Order, or Declension I.*

The First Declension contains a few neuters ending in -e, all masculines in -a, and all feminines in -e; the nominative plural is formed in -an⁽²⁾. The three Classes are so much alike that they may be shown at one view.

⁽¹⁾ Participial nouns form it in -ra (see II. 2.) like indefinite adjectives. Complex feminines (II. 3. and III. 3.) sometimes have a Simple gen. plural.

⁽²⁾ G. nouns forming their plur. in -en (-n) are Simple, all others Complex.

Examples—*eáge eye, steorra star, tunge tongue.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		SINGULAR.	
	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	eág-e	steorr-a	tung-e
Accus.	eág-e	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Gen.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
		PLURAL.	
N. & Acc.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-um	steorr-um	tung-um
Gen.	eág-ena	steorr-ena	tung-ena.

In like manner are declined *eáre ear, cliwe clew; hearra lord, guma man, wyrhta wright, workman, tíma time, draca dragon, hlísa fame; hlæfdige lady, cirice (circe) church, wuce week, eorðe earth, wíse wise, way*⁽²⁾ &c. Also some contracted nouns; as, *freá lord* (masc.) *tá toe, beó*⁽³⁾ *bee* (fem.), making *freán* &c. plural *tán, táum, taena; beón, beóna* &c. *Æ' law, sá seu*⁽⁴⁾, and *eá river* (likewise fem.) are indeclinable, except sometimes gen. *eás*⁽⁵⁾, nom. plural *eán*.

⁽²⁾ *Maana man* and *heofone heaven* are much less common than *man III. 2.* and *heofon II. 2.*

⁽³⁾ *G. zehe, biene*, not contracted.

⁽⁴⁾ *Sá* is also declinable, as *II. 2.*

⁽⁵⁾ All A. S. nouns originally formed the genitive in *-s*; see p. 70, n. 4.

IV.—Complex Order. Declension II.

CLASS I.

The Second Declension, first Class, contains masculine nouns ending in one or more consonants.

Examples—*leáf leaf, word word.*

SINGULAR.		
Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-e	word-e
Gen.	leáf-es	word-es
PLURAL.		
Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-um	word-um
Gen.	leáf-a	word-a.

Thus are declined *eár ear of corn, hús house, deóð beast, ge hát promise, hors horse, spel story, spell, woman, wife, bearn child, bairn, lamb lamb & feoh⁽²⁾ fee, money, cattle makes feo, feos.*

V.—CLASS II.

The Second Declension, second Class, comprises regular masculines ending in a consonant, all common nouns in -e, and a few in -u (-o); the plural is formed in -as; some monosyllables change æ to a in the plural.

(¹) Hence *deer*—"Rats and mice, and such small *deer*."

(²) Comp. L. *pec-us, pec-unia*; our *fee* is *money* only, G. *vieh* only.

Examples—*dæl part, deal, ende end, dæg day.*

SINGULAR.

N. & A.	dæl	end-e	dæg
A. & D.	dæl-e	end-e	dæg
Gen.	dæl-es	end-es	dæg-es

PLURAL.

N. & A.	dæl-as	end-as	dag-as
A. & D.	dæl-um	end-um	dag-um
Gen.	dæl-a	end-a	dag-a.

Thus also *cyning* (cing) *king*, *smið* *smith*, *stán* *stone*, *weg way*, *freo-dóm freedom*, *munuc-hád monk-hood*; *mete meat*, *rædere reader*, *weordscipe worship*; *stæf* ⁽²⁾ *staff, letter*, *mæg kinsman*, &c. Participial nouns in -end usually have the nominative and accusative sing. and plur. alike, and make -ra in the gen. plural. *Freónd friend*, and *feónd foe, fiend* have plur. *frýnd*, *fýnd*, *freónd*, *feónd*, or *freóndas* &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en (-on), and -er (-or) are contracted in the oblique cases and plural; thus *engel angel*, *dryhten lord*, *ealdor prince*, make *engle*, *engles*, *englas* &c. *dryhtne* &c. *Heofen* (-on) *heaven* has abl. and dat. *heofene*, *heofone*, or *heofne* and so on. *Monað* (mond) *month* forms *monde* &c. *Winter* *winter* has abl. and dat. *wintra*, nom. pl. *wintras*, or *winter*. *Feld field*, *ford ford*, and *sumer* (-or) *summer* make abl. and dat. *felda*, *forda*, *sumera*.

(2) Comp. G. *stab*, *stäbe*; &c. G. *buch-stab* is *letter*.

Fæder *father* is seldom varied in the singular, and never contracted. Nouns in -h, and -u (-o), change them to g and w; as, beáh *ring*, beáge, beáges &c.; bealu *bale, injury*, bealwe, and the like: a few drop the -h; as, feorh *life*, feore &c. Those in sc often take x (cs) in the plural; as, fisc *fish*, fixas &c.; sometimes throughout; fix, fixe &c.

VI.—CLASS III.

The Second Declension, third Class, contains all regular feminines ending in a consonant; the plural is formed in -a.

Examples—stefen (*stefn*) *voice*, sprác *speech*.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	stefen	sprác
Acc.	stefn-e	sprác-e
A. & D.	stefn-e	sprác-e
Gen.	stefn-e	sprác-e

PLURAL.

N. & A.	stefn-a	sprác-a
A. & D.	stefn-um	sprác-um
Gen.	stefn-a(-ena)	sprác-a(-ena).

Thus are declined sáwel *soul*, wylen *female slave*, frófer *comfort*, ge-samnung *assembly*, écnys *eternity*, lág *law*, stów *place*, þeód *people*, lár *lore*, myrd *mirth*, bén *prayer*, &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en, -er (-or), are contracted in the oblique cases, and often in all; as, sáwl, wynl, frófr. A single final consonant after a

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

SINGULAR.

N. & A.	sun-u	bróðer	man
A. & D.	sun-a	bréðer	men
Gen.	sun-a	bróðer	mann-e

PLURAL.

N. & A.	sun-a	bróðr-u	men
A. & D.	sun-um	bróðr-um	mann-um
Gen.	sun-a	bróðr-u	mann-a.

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo mead, metheglin; móder mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister: fót foot, and tóð tooth, follow man' making fét, téð. (5) Sun-ena is rare.*

Leóde (G. leute) people, Dene Danes, Engle Angles, Englishmen, and a few more in -e with no singular, make leódum, leóda, &c.

IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in -u or -o, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in -ena.

Examples—*denu vale, bóc book, burh burgh, town.*

SINGULAR.

Nom.	den-u	}	bóc	burh
Acc.	den-e			
A. & D.	den-e		béc	byrig
Gen.	den-e		béc	burg-e

(5) Comp. G. mann, münner; fuss, füsse; zahl, zähne.

So likewise *scip ship*, *lim limb*, *deófol*⁽¹⁾ *devil*, *wæter water*, *ge-writ writing*, *writ*; *wíte punishment*, *ge-mære boundary*, *speres spear*, *melu meal*, *flour*; *bæð bath*, *glæs*⁽²⁾ *glass*, *geat gate*, &c.

Dissyllables are mostly contracted; thus, *heáfod head*, *tácen token*, *wunder wonder*, *make heáfde*, *heáfdes* &c. *tácne*, *wundre* &c.; *nýten beast*, *neat*, *weofod altar*, &c. are usually not. Those in *-en* sometimes double the *n* in the oblique cases; as, *wésten desert*, *wéstenne* &c. *Cild child*, *cealf calf*, and *æg egg*, form their plural *cildru* (*-a*)⁽³⁾, *cealfu*, *ægru*; the first however often has *cild* or *cilde*. *þýstru darkness*, *lendenu loins*, &c. have no singular. Nouns in *-u* take *w*, and are usually contracted, forming the plural in *-a*; as, *searu array*, *ambush*, *searwe*, *searwes*; plur. *searwa* &c.

VIII.—CLASS II.

The Third Declension, second Class, comprises masculines in *-u* (*-o*), forming their plural in *-a*, some irregulars (masc. and fem.) in *-er* (*-or*), changing their vowel in the ablative and dative, and making *-u* (*-o*, *-a*) in the plural, a few (masc.) changing their vowel as above, and in the nominative and accusative plural, &c.

(1) *Deófol* is often masculine.

(2) Comp. G. *fass*, *fässer*; *glas*, *gläser*.

(3) Hence *childr-en*, P. *child-er*; comp. G. *kind*, *kind-er*; *kalb*, *kälb-er*; *ei*, *ei-er*: D. *kind*, *kind-er-en*; *kalf*, *kalv-er-en*; *ei*, *eij-er-en*.

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

SINGULAR.			
N. & A.	sun-u	bróðer	man
A. & D.	sun-a	bréðer	men
Gen.	sun-a	bróðer	mann-e
PLURAL.			
N. & A.	sun-a	bróðr-u	men
A. & D.	sun-um	bróðr-um	mann-um
Gen.	sun-a	bróðr-u	mann-a.

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo nead, metheglin; móder mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister: fót foot, and tóð tooth, follow man' naking fét, téd.* (⁵) *Sun-ena* is rare.

Leóde (G. *leute*) *people, Dene Danes, Engle Angles, Englishmen*, and a few more in -e with no singular, make *leódum, leóda, &c.*

IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in -u or -o, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in -ena.

Examples—*denu vale, bóc book, burh burgh, town.*

SINGULAR.			
Nom.	den-u	}	bóc
Acc.	den-e		
A. & D.	den-e		béc
Gen.	den-e		béc
			byrig
			burg-e

(⁵) Comp. G. *mann, männer; fuss, füsse; zalu, zähne.*

III.—*Indefinite Declension I.*Example—*gód*⁽¹⁾ *good*.

SINGULAR.		
	Neut.	Masc. Fem.
Nom.	gód	gód gód
Acc.	gód	gód-ne gód-e
Abl.	gód-e	
Dat.	gód-um	
Gen.	gód-es	
PLURAL.		
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A.	gód(-u)	gód-e
A. & D.	gód-um	
Gen.	gód-ra.	

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, *wyrð-e* *worth, worthy*, *dýg* *dark*, *sprec-ol* *talkative*, *menn-isc* *human*, *ge-wís* *true*, *soð* *sooth*, *leóht* *light*, *heard* *hard*, *seóc* *wrec* *wretched*, *fæst* *fast*, &c.

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection added; *wyrð-ne*, *wyrð-um*, *wyrð-re*, &c.

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. *heá-nne*, *nearo-ne*; abl. &c. fem. *heá-near-we* or *near-e*; gen. plur. *heá-ra*, *near-wa* *near-a*.

(1) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.

IV.—Indefinite Declension II.

Example—smæl⁽²⁾ *small*.

SINGULAR.		
	Neut.	Masc. Fem.
Nom.	smæl	smæl smal-u
Acc.	smæl	smæl-ne smal-e
<hr/>		
Abl.	smal-e	smale
Dat.	smal-um	smæl-re
Gen.	smal-es	smæl-re
PLURAL.		
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A.	smal-u	smal-e
A. & D.	smal-um	
Gen.	smæl-ra.	

Thus are declined monosyllables with æ (except fæst) most adjectives with derived endings, and particles past of the Complex Order; some of both the *ær*, however, follow Declension I. As, *læt late, slow, er heavy, glæd glad, bær bare, swæs sweet, dear, good, eád-ig blessed, prosperous, fær-lic sudden, dannus, ge-sib-sum peaceable, mæg-er meagre, hlutt-or r, fæg-en glad, fain*. Some dissyllables are con-
 tained in certain forms, as, *hál-ig holy, hál-ge, hál-ges*, but gen. plur. *hál-igra* and the like.

(1) Comp. Nouns III. 1, 3.

III.—Indefinite Declension I.

Example—gód⁽¹⁾ *good*.

SINGULAR.		
	Neut.	Masc. Fem.
Nom.	gód	gód gód
Acc.	gód	gód-ne gód-e
Abl.	gód-e	gód-e
Dat.	gód-um	gód-re
Gen.	gód-es	gód-re
PLURAL.		
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A.	gód(-u)	gód-e
A. & D.	gód-um	
Gen.	gód-ra.	

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-ol), -isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, *wyrð-e worth, worthy, dýg-el dark, sprec-ol talkative, menn-isc human, ge-wís sure, sóð true, sooth, leóht light, heard hard, seóc sick, wrec wretched, fæst fast, &c.*

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection is added; *wyrð-ne, wyrð-um, wyrð-re, &c.*

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. *heá-nne, nearo-ne*; abl. &c. fem. *heá-re, near-we or near-e*; gen. plur. *heá-ra, near-wa or near-a.*

(¹) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.

VI.—*Irregular Comparison.*

the following adjectives are irregularly compared; change of a into e; æ into a; éa into ý, or é; ea, i, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me (²) (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compounded. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
leng (³)	lengre (leng) <i>longer</i>	lengest <i>longest</i>
strong	strengre (strangor) <i>stronger</i>	strengest <i>strongest</i>
hræðe	hræðre (hræðor)	hræðost
þ, rath	quicker (rather)	quickest
eld	ylðre <i>elder</i>	ylðest <i>eldest</i>
nær	nearre (near, nyr) <i>nigher</i>	nyhst, nehst, next <i>nighest, next</i>
hýrre	hýrre <i>higher</i>	hýhst, héhst <i>highest</i>
eáðre (éðre, éð)	eáðre (éðre, éð) <i>easier</i>	eáðost <i>easiest</i>
fyrre (fyr)	fyrre (fyr) <i>further</i>	fyrrest <i>furthest</i>
gyngre	gyngre <i>younger</i>	gyngest <i>youngest</i>

Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

Comp. G. lang, länger, längst; alt, älter, ältest; nahe, näher, nächst; hoch, höher, höchst; jung, jünger, jüngst; fort, fürter; sanft, sanfter, sanftest; eher, erst; gut, wohl, besser, best; mehr, meist, &c.

V.—*Comparison.*

The Comparative and Superlative Degrees are regularly formed by adding -or and -ost⁽¹⁾, (E. and G. -er and -est), to the indefinite form; as, leóf, leóf-or, leóf-ost *dear, dear-er, dear-est* (G. lieb, lieb-er, lieb-est): *a* usually becomes *e*; as, smæl, smæl-or, smæl-ost, *small-small-er, small-est*. (G. schmal, schmal-er, schmal-est. The ending -or is however only adverbial; as an adjective the Comparative is formed in -re, -ra, -re, whether used definitely or indefinitely; as, (pæt) leóf-re, (se leóf-ra, (seó) leóf-re (*the*) *dearer*; (G. das &c. lieb-re (pæt) smæl-re &c. (*the*) *smaller*; (G. das &c. schmal-re) The Superlative has both the definite and indefinite inflections, the former in -ost, or -est, (also the adverbial form), the latter in -oste, -osta, -oste, or -este &c.; as leóf-ost *dearest*, pæt leóf-oste, or leóf-este &c. *the dearest*; (G. das &c. lieb-ste.)

TABLE OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. Adjective.	SUPERLATIVE.
heard	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(pæt) heard-re} \\ \text{(the) hard-er} \end{array} \right.$	heard-ost
hard		hard-est
pæt heard-e		pæt heard-oste
the hard		the hard-est
	Adverb.	
heard-e	heard-or	heard-ost
hard-ly	hard-li-er	hard-li-est.

(¹) Comp. the L. comparative -ior; Gr. superlative -ior-oc, &c.

VI.—*Irregular Comparison.*

The following adjectives are irregularly compared; the change of a into e; æ into a; éa into ý, or é; ea, eo, u, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me ⁽²⁾ (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compared. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
lang ⁽³⁾	lengre (leng)	lengest
<i>long</i>	<i>longer</i>	<i>longest</i>
strang	strengre (strangor)	strengest
<i>strong</i>	<i>stronger</i>	<i>strongest</i>
hræd (hraðe)	hrædre (hraðor)	hraðost
<i>quick, rath</i>	<i>quicker (rather)</i>	<i>quickest</i>
eald	yldre	yldest
old	elder	eldest
neah	nearre (near, nyr)	nyhst, nehst, next
<i>nigh</i>	<i>nigher</i>	<i>nighest, next</i>
heáh	hýrre	hýhst, héhst
<i>high</i>	<i>higher</i>	<i>highest</i>
eáð	eáðre (éðre, éð)	eáðost
<i>easy</i>	<i>easier</i>	<i>easiest</i>
feor	fyrre (fyr)	fyrrest
<i>far</i>	<i>further</i>	<i>furthest</i>
geong	gyngre	gyngest
<i>young</i>	<i>younger</i>	<i>youngest</i>

⁽²⁾ Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

⁽³⁾ Comp. G. lang, länger, längst; alt, älter, ältest; nahe, näher, nächst; hoch, höher, höchst; jung, jünger, jüngst; fort, fürter; sanft, sanfter, sanftest; eher, erst; gut, wohl, besser, best; mehr, meist, &c.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sceort	scyrtre	scyrtest
short	shorter	shortest
(ford, furd)	furdre (furdor)	
(forth)	further	
sóft	séftre (séft)	séftest
soft	softer	softest
ær ⁽¹⁾	ærre (ærer, -or)	ærest (-ost)
early (ere)	earlier, sooner	(erst) first
gód (wel)	betere (bet)	betest, betst
good (well)	better	best
yfel	wyrse (wyr)	wyrrest, wyrst
evil	worse	worst
micel	máre (má) ⁽²⁾	mæst
great, mickle	greater, more	greatest, most
lytel (lyt)	læsse (læs)	læst
little	less	least
forme (fore)		fyrrest, fyrst
former, fore		foremost, first
læt, læteme (late)	lætre (lator)	latost, læteme
late, slow	later, latter	latest, last
síð, síðeme	síðre (síðor)	síðost, síðeme
late, (since)		
nordeme, (nord) ⁽³⁾	(nordor)	nordemest
northern, north		northmost
úfeme (úp)	úfere (úfor)	ýfemest
high (up)	upper	upmost
æfteme (æfter)	æftre	æftemest
aft, after	after	aftmost

⁽¹⁾ Hence O. *or*; "or ever."

⁽²⁾ For *már*, to which we have returned in *more*; O. was *mo*

⁽³⁾ Some of these are often formed in *-weard*; as, *n rðe-we*
northern, north-ward, *úfe-weard* (úp-weard) upper, up-ward.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
hindeme	hindere	hindemest
hind	hinder	hindmost
nneme (inn)	innere (innor)	innemest
nnere (in)	inner	inmost
ítème (út)	útre (útor)	ýtemest
úter (out)	outer, utter	outmost, utmost
nidd, midme		midmest
nid		midmost
niðeme (niðer)	niðre (niðror)	niðemest
low (down)	nether	nethmost.

CHAPTER IV.

I.—Pronouns—Personal.

THE personal Pronouns are *ic I, þú thou*, *hit, he, heó it, he, she*. The two first are the only A. S. words with a dual number.

SINGULAR.			
N.	ic ⁽⁴⁾	þú ⁽⁵⁾	
A.	me	þe	
A.&D.	me	þe	
G.	mín	þín	
DUAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	wit ⁽⁶⁾	we	git
A.	unc	ús	inc
A.&D.	unc	ús	inc
G.	uncer	úre	incer
DUAL.		PLURAL.	
			ge
			eów
			eów
			eówer

(4) Comp. *ēg-w, me, &c.* L. *eg-o, me*; G. *ich, mir, wir*, (D. *wij*) *uns, unser*.

(5) Comp. (Dor.) *rv, re*; L. *tu, te*; G. *du, dir, euch, &c.* D. *gij, &c.*

(6) Remark a peculiar construction with the dual:—*wit Scilling we two, viz. I and Scilling*; *healf þæs cinges, healf uncer Brentinges, half the king's, half mine and Brenting's.*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. hit (¹)	he	heó
A. hit	hine	hí
<hr/>		
A. & D. him		hire
G.	his	hire
<hr/>		
PLURAL.		
N. & A.	hí	
A. & D.	him	
G.	hira	

Meh, mec (L. mihi, G. mich) and þeh, þec (G. dich) sometimes occur for me and þe: likewise the poetical úsih, úsic, and eówih, eówic for ús and eów; and uncit and incit, for unc and inc.

There being, as in English, no reflective pronoun, the personals are used instead; as, ic me reste *I rest me* (*myself*); þa þeówas wyrmdon hig, *the servants were warming them* (*selves*). Sylf *self, same*, declined as an adjective both definitely and indefinitely (I.), and agreeing with the pronoun or noun, gives a strong reflective sense; as, ic sylf or sylfa *I myself*; fram me sylfum *of myself*; þú sylf *thou thyself*; we sylfe *we ourselves*, &c.; seó sylfe tíð *the same time*.⁽²⁾ Sometimes the pronoun stands in the dative before sylf; as, (ic) me sylf *I myself*; him-sylf *he himself*.⁽³⁾

(¹) Comp. ó, ŋ, óv, ol, ai; L. id, is, ea, eum, ejus, ii; G. es, ihn, ihm, ihr; D. het, hij, &c.

(²) Comp. G. ich selber, wir selben, die selbe zeit, &c.

(³) Like F. moi-même, lui-même, hence seemingly *my-self, thy-self*, &c.: *self* is properly no more a noun than αὐτός, L. ipse, or F. même.

II.—*Possessives.*

The Possessive Pronouns are formed, as in German, from the genitives of the two first persons; as, *mín* (mein) *mine, my*; *þín* (G. dein) *thine, thy*; *úncr*, (G. unser) *our*; *úncr*, *eówer* (G. euer) *your*: other Pronouns in general, they are declined as indefinite adjectives I. Those in -er are usually connected; as *úncr*, *eówres*, and the like. U're forms *m*, *úres*, &c; but remains unchanged in the whole infinite singular. The poetical *úser* (*usser*) for *úre* is thus declined:—

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
SINGULAR.		
N. <i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>
A. <i>úser</i>	<i>úserne</i>	<i>usse</i>
A. & D. <i>ussum</i>		<i>usse</i>
G.	<i>usses</i>	<i>usse</i>
PLURAL.		
N. & A. <i>usse, úser</i>		
A. & D. <i>ussum</i>		
G. <i>ussa.</i>		

The genitive of the third person is used unchanged; as, *its, his, hire her, hira their*. To make these relative, the genitive of *syf* agreeing with the pronoun, the indefinite adjective *ágen own*, agreeing with the noun, must be used; as, *þín sylfes bearn thine own*; *tó his ágenre þearfe to his own need*. *Sín* is used in poetry as a possessive of the third person; not however like G. *sein*, for L. *ejus*, but for L. *suus* only.

III.—*Demonstratives.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are *þæt*, *se*, *seó* *that*, likewise the relative *which*, *who*, *that*, and the article *the*; ⁽¹⁾ and *þis*, *þes*, *þeós* *this*.

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.		Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N.	þæt ⁽²⁾	se	seó		þis ⁽³⁾	þes	þeós
A.	þæt	þone	þá		þis	þisne	þás
	Abl. þý		þý			þise	þisse
	D. þám		þære			þisum	þisse
	G. þæs		þære			þises	þissa
	N. & A. þa					þás	
	A. & D. þám					þisum	
	G. þára					þissa	

þæne, *þæm*, *þære*, *þæra*, are sometimes used for *þone*, *þám*, *þære*, *þára*; likewise *þæs* for *þás*; *thes* in *þise*, &c. is often doubled; *þissere* and *þissera* occur also for *þisse* and *þissa*. The indeclinable *þe* is used for all cases of *þæt*, *se*, *seó*, as a relative; combined with it it forms *þæt-te* ⁽⁴⁾ *that which*, *se-þe* *he that*, *seó-þe* *she that*. *þæt*, *se*, *seó* is sometimes repeated in a sentence, standing first as a demonstrative, and next as a relative; but *þe* commonly stands as

(¹) Comp. the threefold use of G. *das*, *der*, *die*.

(²) Comp. *ro*, *ó*, *ῥ*, *rov*, *ra*, *roi*, *rai*; G. *das*, *den*, *dem*, *der*, *des*, &c. D. *dat*, &c. From *seó* comes *she* (G. *sie*); from *þa* *they*, *þæm* *them*, *þæra* *their*.

(³) Comp. G. *dies*, &c.; *þás* and *þés* have become *those* and *these*.

(⁴) *Þætte* is also *that* (conjunction) G. *dass*.

relative in the second place; as, *pæt micle ge-teld e Moises worhte, the great tent that Moses made.*

Pe is sometimes used along with *hit*, &c. as a relative; as, *pe þurh hine through whom.*

Swá is sometimes used (like *G. so*) as an indeclinable relative.

Ylc same, follows the indefinite declension.

Swylc such, is often repeated, standing in the second place adverbially; as, *Ælc þing on-gitan swylc wylce hit is to understand each thing so as it is.*

IV.—Interrogatives.

The Interrogative Pronouns are *hwæt*, *hwá?* *what?* *who?* *hwylc?* *which?* *hwæder whether?* *which?* The first has no plural, and is thus declined:

Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.
Nom. <i>hwæt</i>	<i>hwá</i>
Acc. <i>hwæt</i>	<i>hwone</i> (<i>hwæne</i>)
Abl. <i>hwý</i>	
Dat. <i>hwám</i> (<i>hwæm</i>)	
Gen. <i>hwæs</i> (^s)	

It answers to *L. quis not qui*, and is never used as a relative: with a neuter adjective it governs the genitive; as, *hwæt yfeles? what evil?* it is also (like *G. et-was, was*) used not interrogatively, for *somewhat, a little*; as, *hwæt lytles some little.*

(^s) From *hwám* and *hwæs*, are *whom* and *whose*.

V.—Indefinites.

The Indefinite pronouns are swá-hwæt(-swá) *what-so-ever*, swá-hwá (-swá) *who-so-ever*, swá-hwylc (-swá) *which-so-ever*, æg-hwæt (ge-hwæt), æg-hwylc, &c. *whatsoever*, &c. which follow the declension of the chief word in the compound. Others are ælc, *each*, *every one*, eall *all*, ænig *any*, nænig *none whatever*, án-lipig (æn-lipig) *single, alone*, &c. Ge-noh *enough* is sometimes indeclinable. A'n *one, a*, and sum *some, a, a certain*, serve for the indefinite article, which is however often not expressed: sum placed after a genitive cardinal number implies one above it; as, fíf-tyrna sum *one of sixteen, one with fifteen others*. Manig (mænig) *many* sometimes has nom. and accus. plur. manega. Fela *much, many* is indeclinable: feáwa (feá) *few*, sometimes has abl. and dat. plur. feáwum, gen. feára; both often govern a genitive plural; as, mádma fela *many treasures*; feá worda *few words*. Man (*man*) is used (like G. man, and F. on) (') indefinitely for *one, they*; as, Me man sægde *they told me* (G. man sagte mir). From wiht (wuht) *creature, being, (wight, whit)* are formed á-wiht (á-wuht) contracted to áwht, áht *anything, ought*; and nán-wiht (-wuht) náwht, náht⁽¹⁾ *nothing, nought*. Other indefinite Pronouns are óðer (-or) *other, second* (L. alius, and alter for secundus), áwðer, áðer *one of two* (L. alter duorum), náwðer (náðor), *neither of two* (L. neuter), ægðer

(¹) Formerly *hom*, from L. homo.

(²) Hence *not*, like G. nicht from ne-wicht.

er, each of two. Oð *e r* forms its oblique cases *fem.* 5. óð *re*; it sometimes follows indefinite Decl. II.

VI.—Comparative Table of Cardinal Numbers.

Æ.	LATIN.	DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
	un-um	een	án	one	ein
	duo	twee	twá	two	zwei
1	tria	drie	þreo	three	drei
4	quatuor	vier	feower	four	vier
5	quinque	vijf	fíf	five	fünf
	sex	zes	six	six	sechs
7	septem	zeven	seofon	seven	sieben
8	octo	acht	eahta	eight	acht
9	novem	negen	nigon	nine	neun
10	decem	tien	tyñ	ten	zehn
CH.	A. S.		ENGLISH.	GERMAN.	
	endlufon		eleven	eilf	
alf	twelf		twelve	zwölf	
-tien	þreo-ttyne		thir-teen	drei-zehn	
rtien	feower-tyne		fourteen	vierzehn	
tien	fíf-tyne		fifteen	funfzehn	
ien	six-tyne		sixteen	sechzehn	
entien	seofon-tyne		seventeen	siebzehn	
tien	eahta-tyne		eighteen	achtzehn	
entien	nigon-tyne		nineteen	neunzehn	
n-tig	twen-tig		twen-ty	zwan-zig	
tig	þry-ttig		thirty	drei-ssig	
rtig	feower-tig		forty	vierzig	

(³) Æol. for *ressapa*.

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
vijftig	ffi-tig	fifty	funfzig
zestig	six-tig	sixty	sechzig
zeventig	hund-seofon-tig	seventy	siebzig
tachtig (¹)	hund-eahtatig	eighty	achtzig
negentig	hund-nigontig	ninety	neunzig
honderd	{hund, hundred, hund-teontig}	hundred	hundert
	hund-endlufontig	110	
	hund-twelftig	120	
duizend	púsend	thousand	tausend.

A'n, like all other pronouns, follows indef. Decl. I., sometimes making accus. masc. ænne; thus too nán none. Used definitely, áne, ána, áne, and standing after its noun, &c., it means *alone*. Twá (²) and preo are thus declined:—

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & A.	twá (tú)	twegen (³)	twá	preo	prý	preo
	A. & D. twám (twæm)			þrym		
	G. twegra (twega)			þreora.		

Bá, begen, bá *both*, follows twá; prefixed to twá it forms bá-twá (bú-tú) (⁴) which is indeclinable. The numbers feower to twelf inclusive, when used absolutely, have a nom. in -e, &c.; as, ealle seofone *all seven*; án of pá m twelfum *one of the twelve*; áu

(¹) The t- is probably a remnant of the prefix *hond-* retained before the vowel.

(²) S. *twa*. G. *zwei*, *zwo*.

(³) *Twain*. G. *zween*.

(⁴) Hence *both*, G. *beide*; comp. Italian *ambe-due*.

ífa *one of these five*. Those above eahta usu-
vern a genitive. Twentig and the others in
ake abl. and dat. -tigum, gen. -tigra. Hund
d to the tens after sixtig (answering to -κοιτ-α, L.
) is sometimes dropt when hund *hundred* goes
as, scipa án hund and eahtatig, *of ships one
d and eighty*. Hund (*hundred*) follows II. 1;
ed and þúsend, III. 1.

s are placed before tens, as, six and fiftig, *six
ty*. In numbers above a hundred, the smaller
last, and the noun is repeated; as, Hund-
g wintra and seofon and feowertig wintra,
red winters and seven and forty winters.⁽⁵⁾

ntre affixed to numbers forms adjectives denoting
as, fram twi-wintrum cilde, *from the child of
ars*.

VII.—Ordinal Numbers.

orme, se forma, seó forme	<i>first</i>
se, seó óder	<i>second</i>
ry-dde, se þry-dda, seó þry-dde ⁽⁶⁾	<i>third</i>
se, -þa, -þe	<i>four-th</i>
-ta, -te	<i>fifth</i>
, — —	<i>sixth</i>
-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>seventh</i>
þe — —	<i>eighth</i>
þe	<i>ninth</i>

The northern nations reckoned time by winters.

Comp. τρι-τος, L. ter-tius, G. dri-tte, vier-te, &c.

teóþe	<i>tenth</i>
endlyf-te	<i>eleventh</i>
twelfte	<i>twelfth</i>
þry-tteóðe	<i>thir-teenth</i>
feower-teóðe	<i>fourteenth</i>
fif-teóðe	<i>fifteenth</i>
six-teóðe	<i>sixteenth</i>
seofon-teóðe	<i>seventeenth</i>
eahta-teóðe	<i>eighteenth</i>
nigon-teóðe	<i>nineteenth</i>
twentig-ode	<i>twenti-eth</i>
þryttigode	<i>thirtieth</i>
feowertigode	<i>fortieth</i>
fiftigode	<i>fiftieth</i>
sixtigode	<i>sixtieth</i>
hund-seofontigode	<i>seventieth</i>
hund-eahtatigode	<i>eightieth</i>
hund-nigontigode	<i>ninetieth</i>
hund-teontigode	<i>hundredth</i>
hund-endlufontigode	<i>110th</i>
hund-twelftigode	<i>120th</i>

Units combined with ordinal tens stand first with cardinals, last when ordinals; as, *án* and *þryttig* *one and thirtieth*; *þý* *twentigodan dæge* and *feordan dæge* *Septembris, on the twenty and fourth day of September*.

Healf half placed after an ordinal number (like *halb*) reduces it by half; as, *óðer-healf* (lit. *second half*) *one and a half*, (G. *andert-halb*); *þridde-h*

[lit. *third-half*) *two and a half* (G. *dritte-halb*).⁽¹⁾ A'n, wá, preo, form *æn-e once*, twi-wa (tu-wa) *twice*, try-wa *thrice*; with the other cardinals, and all the ordinals, síð *a time* is used in the ablative for the same purpose; as, feower, fíf, &c. síðum or síðon *four, five, &c. times*; (þý) forman, óðre, þryddan, &c. síðe *the first, second, third, &c. time*.

CHAPTER V.

I.—Verbs. Conjugation.

THERE are two Orders of Verbs, as of Nouns; viz. the Simple and the Complex; ⁽²⁾ the former containing pure or open Verbs answering to the Greek in -αειν, -εειν, and -οειν, and to the Latin in -are, -ēre, and -ire; the latter impure or close Verbs, answering to the Greek regulars, and to the Latin in -ěre, &c.⁽³⁾ The Simple Order forms its imperfect by adding -ode (-ede), -de, or -te to the root; the participle past by adding -od (-ed), -d, or -t: in the Complex the imperfect becomes monosyllabic and changes its vowel; the participle past ends in -en.⁽⁴⁾ The former is divided into three Classes forming one Conjugation; the latter into two Conjugations of three Classes each.

(¹) Comp. ἡμισυ-τριτος, L. *sesqui-alter*, -tertius.

(²) Simple Verbs are by Grimm termed Weak, Complex Strong.

(³) See Rask's Grammar, pp. 67—70.

(⁴) E. and G. verbs in general follow the A.S., though complex forms have in each not seldom become simple.

II.—*Comparative View of the Chief Tenses.*

SIMPLE ORDER, OR CONJUGATION I.

Examples—*luf-ian to love*, G. *lieb-en*; *hýr-an to hear*, G. *hör-en*; *tell-an to tell, reckon*, G. *zähl-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	ic luf-ige	— luf-ode	(ge-)luf-od.
	<i>I love</i>	— lov-ed	lov-ed
	G. ich lieb-e	— lieb-te	ge-lieb-t
Class II.	hýr-e	hýr-de	(ge-)hýr-ed
	<i>hear</i>	hear-d	hear-d
	G. hör-e	hör-te	ge-hör-t
Class III.	tell-e	teal-de	(ge-)teal-d
	<i>tell</i>	tol-d	tol-d
	G. zähl-e	zähl-te	ge-zähl-t.

COMPLEX ORDER.—CONJUGATION II.

Examples—*brec-an to break*, G. *brech-en*; *heald-an to hold*, G. *halt-en*; *drag-an to draw, drag*, G. *trag-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	brec-e	bræc	(ge-)broc-en
	<i>break</i>	brake	brok-en
	G. brech-e	brach	ge-broch-en
Class II.	heald-e	heóld	(ge-)heald-en
	<i>hold</i>	held	hold-en
	G. halt-e	hielt	ge-halt-en
Class III.	drag-e	dróh	(ge-)drag-en
	<i>draw</i>	drew	draw-n
	G. trag-e	trug	ge-trag-en.

CONJUGATION III.

Examples—bind-an *to bind*, G. bind-en; dríf-an *to ve*, G. treib-en; clúf-an *to cleave*, G. klieb-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
CLASS I.	bind-e	band	(ge-)bund-en
	<i>bind</i>	<i>bound</i>	<i>bound-en</i>
	G. bind-e	band	ge-bund-en
CLASS II.	dríf-e	dráf	(ge-)drif-en
	<i>drive</i>	<i>drove</i>	<i>driv-en</i>
	G. treib-e	trieb	ge-trieb-en
CLASS III.	clúf-e	cleáf	(ge-)clon-en
	<i>cleave</i>	<i>clave</i>	<i>clon-en</i>
	G. klieb-e	klob	ge-klob-en.

III.—*Simple Order, or Conjugation I.*

CLASS I. CLASS II. CLASS III.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present.

ng.	ic luf-ige (¹)	hýr-e	tell-e
	þú luf-ast	hýr-st	tel-st
	he luf-að	hýr-ð	tel-ð
ur. we, ge,	hí luf-iað	hýr-að	tell-að
	luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e

Imperfect.

ng.	ic luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
	þú luf-odest	hýr-dest	teal-dest
	he luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
l. we, ge,	hí luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

(¹) Comp. *love*, *lov-est*, *lov-eth*; G. *lieb-e*, *lieb-est*, *lieb-et*, &c. L. *am-o*, *-at*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present.

Sing. luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Plur. luf-ion	hýr-on	tell-on
Imperfect.		
Sing. luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Plur. luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. luf-a	hýr	tell-e
Plur. { luf-iað	{ hýr-að	{ tell-að
{ luf-ige	{ hýr-e	{ tell-e

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	luf-ian	hýr-an	tell-an
Gerund.	tó luf-igenne	—hýr-enne	—tell-anne
Part. pres.	luf-igende	hýr-ende	tell-ende
P. past (ge-)	luf-od	(ge-) hýr-ed	(ge-) teal-d.

The first form of the present indicative, and of the imperative plural, is used when the pronoun comes first, or is left out; as, *we lufiað we love, hýrað hear*; the second when the pronoun follows close; as, *telle ge tell ye?* The subjunctive plural sometimes ends in *-a* or *-en*; as, *lufian, hýrden*, and the like. The gerund which is always preceded by *tó*, and seems to be a kind of dative of the infinitive, answers to our infinitive present, active and passive, and to the Latin supine infinitive future, active and passive, &c.; as, *Come þú s tó for-spillanne? camest thou to destroy us?* L. *non perditum*. *Hwæðer is éðre tó cweðanne? whether is easier to say?* L. *facilius dictu*. *Eart þú se-þe t cumenne eart? art thou he that is (art) to come*

venturus est. Heó býð tó lufigenne (¹) *she is*
be, or ought) to be loved, L. amanda est. The
 ve of the first Class is often formed in -igan, some-
 n -igean, for -ian, and g is put in or left out in
 ther forms with little or no change of pronun-
 . The Gerund of the third Class sometimes makes
 for -anne. Ge- may be prefixed to any part of
 n general, but is oftenest used with the imperfect,
 pecially with the participle past, though not, as in
 n, to be considered the sign of the latter.(²)

IV.—Class I.

e lufian are conjugated ;

	Imperfect.	Part. past.	
æ	hatode	(ge-)hatod	<i>hate</i>
æ	losode	losod	<i>be lost</i>
ge	clypode	clypod	<i>call, clepe</i>
e	fullode	fullod	<i>baptize</i>
æ	fúlode	fúlod	<i>rot</i>
ge	cunnode	cunnod	<i>try</i>
ge(³)	wacode	wacod	<i>watch</i>
ge(⁴)	hangode	hangod	<i>hang</i>
e	hýrode	hýrod	<i>hire</i>
ge	hergode	hergod	<i>harry</i>
ge	macode	macod	<i>make</i>
ge	bletsode	bletsod	<i>bless.</i>

hence the phrases "house to let," "he is to blame," &c.

te- is seldom used before another prefix.

Neut. L. vigilare ; act. weccan.

Neut. L. pendere ; act. hangan, hón.

Some verbs of this Class, especially those having *e* for their vowel, form their imperfect and part. past in *-ede* and *ed*, as well as *-ode* and *od*; as, *herian to praise*, *seglian to sail*, *ge-fremian to profit*, which make *herede*, (*ge*-)*hered*, or *herode*, *herod*; *seglede*, and the like: *-ode* and *-od* are sometimes changed into *-ade* and *-ad*. *Swerian to swear*, borrows some tenses from a complex form, making imperf. *swerede* or *swóre*; *swore*; imp. subj. *swóre*; imper. *swera* or *swere*; part. past (*ge*-)*sworen sworn*. *Folgian, fyligan, or fylian to follow*, has imperf. *folgode*, *fyligde*, or *fylide*; imper. *folga* or *fylig*.

V.—Class II.

The second Class forms its imperfect and participle past in *-de* and *-ed*, or in *-te* and *-t*, according to its characteristic letter; the hard consonants, viz. *t, p, c, x*, requiring *-te* and *-t*; the soft, viz. *d, ð, f, g, w, l, m, n, r, s*, taking *-de* and *-ed*; as,

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
méte	métte	(ge-)mét	<i>meet(met)</i>
lette	lette	lett	<i>let, hinder</i>
dyppe	dypte	dypt	<i>dip(-t)</i>
tæce	tæhte	tæht	<i>teach(taught)</i>
lixe	lixte	lixt	<i>gleam(-ed)</i>
læde	lædde	læded	<i>lead(led)</i>
sende	sende	send	<i>send</i>
cýðe	cýðde	cýðed	<i>make known</i>
ge-lýfe	ge-lýfde	ge-lýfed	<i>believe(-d)</i>

	Imperf.	Part. past.	
e	wrégde	wréged	<i>be-wray(-ed)</i>
we	be-læwde	be-læwed	<i>accuse(-d)</i>
	fylde	fyllad	<i>fill(-ed)</i>
	týmde	týmed	<i>teem(-ed)</i>
	wénde	wéned	<i>ween(-ed)</i>
	lærde	læred	<i>teach</i>
	rædde	ræsed	<i>rush(-ed).</i>

me verbs in *-gan* are contracted; as, *þreagan*, *n to vex, reproach*, *tweógan*, *tweón to doubt*: *þreage* or *þreá*, *þreást*, *þreáð*; pl. *þreagað*, *ð*, &c.; *tweóge* or *tweó*, *tweóst*, *tweóð*, &c.; rf. *þreáde*, *tweóde*; part. past *þreáð*, *tweóð*.

ie second and third persons singular sometimes make *-eð*, especially when many consonants might othermeet; as, *nemne (I) name*, *nemnest*, *nemneð*; rf. *nemde*: some have both forms; as, *læde*, *lætst*, or *lædest*, *lædeð*; part. past *læded* or *læð*. s with *s*, *d*, and *t* form the third person in *-t*; as, *æ*, *ræst*; *sende*, *sent*; *méte*, *mét*: those with *ð* as *cýðe*, *cýð*; imperf. *cýðde* or *cýdde*; p. past *æð* or *cýð*. Verbs in this and the following classes

a double characteristic, drop one letter and take *-e* e imperative; as, *dyppe*, *dype*, and the like. To class belong several transitives, derived from nsitives of the Complex Order; as, *bærnan to (act.)*, from *byrnan to burn* (neut.); *drenca* ('') *ench*, from *drinca to drink*; *fylla* *to fell*, from

Comp. G. *tränken*, *fällen*, *senken*, *setzen*, from *trinken*, *fallen*, *n*, *sitzen*.

feallan to fall; *a-ræran to rear*, from *a-rísan arise*; *sencan to sink* (act.), from *sincan to sink* (neut.); *settan to set*, from *sittan to sit*; *ærnan let run*, from *yrnan to run*. *Lybban to live*, at *hycgan to think*, borrow some forms from *leofian*, at *hogian*: they are thus conjugated:—

Indic. pres. 1. lybbe	Subj. pres. lybbe
2. leofast	plur. lybbon
3. leofað	Imperf. leofode
plur. { lybbað	plur. leofodon
{ lybbe	Imper. leofa
Imperf. leofode(-st)	plur. { lybbað
plur. leofodon	{ lybbe
Inf. pres. lybban	Part. pres. lybbende
Ger. lybbenne	P.past (ge-)leofod.

Hæbban or *habban*(¹) *to have*, has some forms from *hafian*: it is thus conjugated:—

Ind. pres. 1. hæbbe (habbe)	Subj. pres. hæbbe (hæ)
2. hæfst (hafast)	plur. habbon
3. hæfð (hafað)	Imperf. hæfde
plur. { habbað(hafiað)	plur. hæfdon
{ hæbbe (habbe)	Imper. hafa
Imperf. hæfde(-st)	plur. { habbað
plur. hæfdon	{ hæbbe
Inf. pres. hæbban(habban)	Part. pres. hæbbende
Ger. habbenne	P.past (ge-)hæfed, hæ

The first person present is sometimes in poetry |

(¹) Comp. throughout L. *hab-ere*, G. *hab-en*.

fo. Nabban (for nehabban) *to have not*, has indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, following ban.

VI.—Class III.

The third Class changes *e* into *ea*, *é* into *ó*, &c. in imperfect, forming it in *-de* or *-te*, and the part. in *-d* or *-t* by the rules given above. The English verbs commonly change the vowel in like manner, German sometimes.

	Imperf.	Part. past.	
e	stealde	(ge-) steald	<i>leap</i>
e	reahte ⁽²⁾	reaht	<i>reck (raught)</i>
i	sealde	seald	<i>sell (sold)</i>
e	{ sægde sæde	{ sægd sæd	{ say (said)
e	lede	led	<i>lay (laid)</i>
ge	bóhte	bóht	<i>buy (bought)</i>
	sóhte	sóht	<i>seek (sought)</i>
ge ⁽³⁾	bróhte	bróht	<i>bring (brought)</i>
e	worhte	worht	<i>work (wrought)</i>

icge makes 3 sing. pres. *segð* or *sagað*; imper. or *saga*. The impersonal *þincan* (G. *dünken*) *m*, must not be confounded with *þencan* (G. *denken*) *o think*. *þincan* makes 3 sing. pres. *þincð* (G. *t*) (*me-*)*thinks*; plur. *þincað*; imperf. *þúhte* (G. *te*) (*me-*)*thought*; part. past (ge-)þúht.

(²) Also *rehte*, &c.; *réce*, *róhte* is another form.

(³) Comp. G. *bringe*, *brachte*, *ge-bracht*.

pencan makes imperf. *þóhte* (G. *dachte*) *though* part. past (ge-) *þóht* (G. *ge-dacht*).

A few transitives also from complex intransitives belong to this class; as, *a-cwellan to kill* (*quell*), from *a-cwelan to perish* (*quail*); *lecgan* ⁽¹⁾ *to lay*, from *liegan to lie*; *weccan to awaken*, from *wacan to wake*; *Willan* ⁽²⁾ *to will*, and *nyllan* ⁽³⁾ *to will not*, are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	1. wille	Pres.	{ wille
	2. wilt		{ willon
	3. wile	Imperf.	{ wolde
pl.	{ willað		{ woldon
	{ wille	INFINITIVE.	
Imperf.	wolde (-st)	Pres.	willan
pl.	woldon	P. pres.	willende
<hr/>			
Pres.	1. nelle	Pres.	nelle(nylle)
	2. nelt		pl. nellon(nyllon)
	3. nele(nyle)	Imperf.	{ nolde
pl.	{ nellað (nyllað)		{ noldon
	{ nelle	Imper.	{ nelle
Imperf.	{ nolde(-st)		{ nellað, &c.
	{ noldon	Infin.	nyllan.

VII.—Complex Order.

The Complex Order changes the vowel in the imperfect, as in English and German: the imperfect *em*

(¹) Comp. G. *legen*, *wecken*, from *liegen*, *wachen*.

(²) *Βουλ-εσθαι*, L. *vell-e*, *vol-ui*; G. *woll-en*, *will*, &c. *woll-te*.

(³) L. *no'lle*, for *ne velle*.

the characteristic, which however if *bb* becomes *f* ;
h : in the second pers. sing. and in the plural *h*
in becomes *g*.

The Second Conjugation changes certain vowels in
second and third persons sing. present as in German.
part. past sometimes changes its vowel, as in Eng-
and German.

Examples—*breca*n to *break*, *healdan* to *hold*, *drag-*
to *draw*, *drag*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
INDICATIVE MODE.		
Present.		
g. 1. <i>brece</i> (⁴)	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
2. <i>bricst</i>	<i>hyltst</i>	<i>drægst</i>
3. <i>bricð</i>	<i>hylt</i> (<i>healt</i>)	<i>drægð</i>
r. { <i>brecað</i>	{ <i>healdað</i>	{ <i>dragað</i>
{ <i>brece</i>	{ <i>healde</i>	{ <i>drage</i>
Imperfect.		
g. 1. <i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
2. <i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
3. <i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
r. <i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.		
Present.		
g. <i>brece</i>	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
r. <i>brecon</i>	<i>healdon</i>	<i>dragon</i>
Imperfect.		
g. <i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
r. <i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon</i> .

) Comp. G. *breche*, *brichst*, *bricht* ; *halte*, *hältst*, *hält* ; plur. *brechen*,
en, &c.

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		IMPERATIVE MODE.	
Sing.	brec	heald	drag
Plur.	{ brecað brece	{ healdað healde	{ dragað drage
		INFINITIVE MODE.	
Pres.	brecan	healdan	dragan
Gen.	tó breccanne	—healdanne	—dragganne
P. pres.	brecende	healdende	dragende
P. past.	(ge-)brocen	(ge-)healden	(ge-)dragen.

VIII.—Class I.

In the First Class *e* becomes in the second and third persons sing. present, *i* or *y*; *i* remains unchanged, as in German. The imperfect is formed in *æ*, which in the second pers. sing. and the whole plural becomes *æ*; *e* in *ea*: in the part. past *i* sometimes becomes *e*; *e*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
{ sprece ⁽¹⁾	spricð	spræc	(ge-)spreccen
{ spece	spicð	spæc	specen
<i>speak</i>		<i>spake</i>	<i>spoken</i>
trede	trit	træd	treden
tread		trod	trodden
ete	yt	æt	eten
eat		ate	eaten
lese	list	læs	lesen
<i>lease, gather</i>			

(1) Comp. G. *spreche, sprach*; *trete, trat, ge-treten*, &c. *ge-bäre, -boren*; *stehle, stahl, ge-stohlen*, &c.

pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
	bitt	bæd <i>bade</i>	beden <i>bidden</i>
	sitt	sæt <i>sate</i>	seten <i>sitten</i>
	lið	læg <i>lay</i>	legen <i>lien, lain</i>
	swefð	swæf	swefen
	byrd	bær <i>bare</i>	boren <i>born</i>
	stylð	stæl <i>stole</i>	stolen <i>stolen</i>
ite t	for-git	for-geat <i>forgat</i>	for-giten <i>forgotten</i>
	gifð	geaf <i>gave</i>	gifen <i>given</i>

nan *to take*, makes third pers. pres. nimð; im-
nam, name, &c. p. past numen. Cuman
nan) *to come* makes third pers. cymð; imperf.
cwom), come, &c. p. past cumen.
san *to be* is thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.

1. eom(°)	Imperf. 1. wæs
2. eart	2. wære
3. is (ys)	3. wæs
r. synd (syndon)	plur. wæron

omp. *tiμ-i, ior-i*; L. sum, est, sum-us, sunt, sim, er-am, &c.; G.
l, seyð, sey, war, wære, ge-wesen.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	sý, (síg, seó)	Imperf.	wære
plur.	sýn	plur.	wæron
Imper.	wes	Inf. pres.	wesan
plur.	{ wesad wese	Ger.	tó wesanne
		Part. pres.	wesende
		Part. past	(ge-)wesen.

With some of these forms the negative *ne* is thus combined :

Pres. 1. (*ic*) *neom* (*I am not*). 3. *nis* (*nys*) ; imperf. *næs*, &c. ; subj. imperf. *nære*, &c.

Cweðan to say is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. *cweðe*, *cwyst*, *cwyrð* ; imperf. *cwæð*, *cwæde*, *cwæð* (*quoth*), pl. *cwædon* ; subj. pres. *cweðe*, imperf. *cwæde* ; part. past (ge-) *cweden* : it is otherwise regular.

IX.—Class II.

In the Second Class *á* becomes *æ* ; *ea*, *y* ; *eá*, *ý* ; *ó*, *é*, in the second and third persons : the imperf. has *é*, or *eó* (*e* or *eo*).

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>læte</i> (¹)	<i>læt</i>	<i>let</i>	(ge-) <i>læten</i>
<i>let</i>			
<i>slæpe</i>	<i>slæpð</i>	<i>slép</i>	<i>slæpen</i>
<i>sleep</i>		<i>sleep-t</i> (²)	

(¹) Comp. G. *lasse*, *lässt*, *liess*, *ge-lassen* ; *heisse*, *hiess* ; *wachse*, *wuchs* ; *laufe*, *läuft*, *lief*, &c.

(²) *Slept*, *lept*, *swept*, *wept*, are complex forms become simple : *sleep*, *lep*, &c., as also *bet*, are still in P. use.

1st. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
	hæt	{ héht ^(s) } { hét }	hátén
2nd	héht	heng <i>hung</i>	hangen
3rd	wylt	weóld	wealden
4th, wield	fylđ	feoll	feallen
5th	(fealđ)	<i>fell</i>	<i>fallen</i>
6th	wyxt	weox	weaxen
7th, grow	beáted	beót	beáten
8th		(bet)	<i>beaten</i>
9th	blét	bleót	blóten
10th, fice	hlýpđ	hleóp	hleápen
11th		<i>lep-t</i>	
12th	swápeđ	sweóp	swápen
13th	(swápeđ)	<i>swep-t</i>	
14th	wépeđ	weóp	wépen
15th		<i>wep-t</i>	
16th	cnáweđ	cneów	cnáwen
17th		<i>knew</i>	<i>known</i>
18th	heáweđ	heów	heówen
19th		<i>hewn</i>	
20th	gréweđ	greów	grówen
21st		<i>grew</i>	<i>grown</i>

Héht is a relic of the reduplication in use in Gothic as in Greek, which Latin retains several instances; leólc from lácan to play (le), is of like nature.

The imperfects without an accent are of doubtful quantity.

Hátan when meaning *to be called*, has the simple imperfect hátte, but part. past (ge-)hátan.

Hó makes pres. plur. hóð, hó; imper. hoh; infinitive hangan or hón, and is followed by fangan, fón *to take*.

Cneow and the like often become cnéw &c.

Gangan, gán⁽¹⁾ *to go*, dón *to do*, and búan *to inhabit, cultivate* (G. bauen, L. colere) are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		
Pres. 1. gange, gá ⁽²⁾	dó	búe
2. gæst	dést	býst
3. gæð	déð	býð
Pl. { gáð { gá	{ dóð { dó	
Imperf. geong, eóde	dyde	búde
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Sing. gá	dó	bú
Pl. gán	dón	bún
IMPERATIVE.		
Sing. gang, gá	dó	
Pl. { gáð { gá	{ dóð { dó	

(¹) S. and P. gang, gae. The contracted forms are most used; e is the common imperfect, geong the poetical.

(²) Comp. G. gehe, gieng, ge-gangen; thue, that, ge-than.

INFINITIVE.		
gangan, gán	dón	búan
	tó dónne	
es. gangende	dónde	búende
st gangen, gán	(ge-)dón	(ge-)bún.

X.—Class III.

the Third Class, a becomes æ; éá, ý, &c. in the second and third persons: the imperfect has ó.

ers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
e	scæcð	scóc (sceóc)	(ge-)scacen
e		<i>shook</i>	<i>shaken</i>
(³)	færð	fór	faren
go			
he	hlihð	hlóh	hlogen
	slýhð	slóh	slegen
		<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>
e	hlæt	hlód	hladen
			<i>laden</i>
e	græfð	gróf	grafen
, dig			<i>graven</i>
oe	hefð	hóf	hafen
e		<i>hove</i>	
pe	scypð	scóp (sceóp)	sceapen
, create			<i>shapen</i>
oe	wæxð	wócs	wæscen
			<i>washen</i>

G. fahre, fährt, fuhr, ge-fahren; schlage, schlug; hebe, hob, ge-; scheide, schied, ge-schieden, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
stande	stent	stód	standen
<i>stand</i>		<i>stood</i>	
gale	gæld	gól	galen
<i>enchant</i>			
spæne	spænd	spón	spanen
<i>allure</i>			
sceade	scyt	sceód(')	sceaden
<i>part, shed</i>			

Sleá makes imper. slýh or sléh; infin. sleán: thus also leán *to blame*, and þweán *to wash*; p. past þwegen, þwogen. Stande sometimes has standest, standed.

XI.—Conjugation III.

In the Third Conjugation the vowel remains the same in the present; but that of the imperfect is changed in the second person singular, and in the whole plural: the part. past has either the same vowel as these persons, or one near akin.

Examples:—bindan *to bind*, drífan *to drive*, clúfan *to cleave*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	INDICATIVE MODE.	
	Present.	
Sing. 1. binde	drífe	clúfe
2. bintst	drífst	clúfst
3. bint	drífd	clúfd

(') P. *skod*.

Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe
--------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

Imperfect.

Sing.	1. band	dráf	cleáf
	2. bunde	drífe	clufe
	3. band	dráf	cleáf
Plur.	bundon	drífon	clufon

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present.

Sing.	binde	drífe	clúfe
Plur.	bindon	drífon	clúfon

Imperfect.

Sing.	bunde	drífe	clufe
Plur.	bundon	drífon	clufon

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	bind	dríf	clúf
Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	bindan	drífan	clúfan
Ger.	bindanne	drífanne	clúfanne
P. pres.	bindende	drífende	clúfende
P. past	(ge-)bunden	(ge-)drífen	(ge-)clufen.

XII.—Class I.

In the First Class, i (y), e, eo, become a (o), ea, æ, in the imperfect, and these in the second person and plural are again changed to u: the part. past has u or o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
yrne ⁽¹⁾	yrnd̃	arn	(ge-)urnen
<i>run</i>		<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>
{ frine	frind̃	fran	frunen }
{ frigne		frægn	frugnen }
<i>enquire</i>			
singe	singd̃	sang	sungen
<i>sing</i>		<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
drince	drincd̃	dranc	druncen
<i>drink</i>		<i>drank</i>	<i>drunken</i>
swimme	swimd̃	swamm	swommen
<i>swim</i>		<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>
climbe	climb̃d̃	clomm	clumben
<i>climb</i>		<i>clomb</i>	
swelle	swyld̃	sweoll	swollen
<i>swell</i>			<i>swollen</i>
swelge	swylgd̃	swealh	swolgen
<i>swallow</i>			
melte	mylt	mealt	molten
<i>melt</i>			<i>molten</i>
gelde	gylt	geald	golden
<i>pay</i>			
helpe	hylpd̃	healp	holpen
<i>help</i>			<i>holpen</i>
delfe	dylfd̃	dealf	dolfen
<i>delve</i>			
murne	myrnd̃	mearn	mornen
<i>mourn</i>			

(¹) G. rinne, rann, ge-ronnen; singe, sang, ge-sungen; trinke, trar
schwelle, schwillt, schwoll, ge-schwollen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
beorge <i>save, defend</i>	byrgð	bearh	borgen
weorpe <i>throw</i>	wyrpð	wearp	worpen
steorfe <i>die, starve</i>	styrfd	stærf	storfen
berste <i>burst</i>	byrst	bærst	borsten <i>borsten</i>
þersce <i>thresh</i>	þyrscð	þærsc	þorscen
feohte <i>fight</i>	fyht	feaht <i>fought</i>	fohten <i>foughten</i>
{ bregde brede <i>braid, draw</i>	brit	brægd bræd	brogden broden }

Weorðan⁽²⁾ *to be, to become*, is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. sing. 1. weorðe	Subj. pres. weorðe, &c.
2. wyrst	Imperf. wurde, &c.
3. wyrð	Imper. weorð
plur. { weorðað weorðe	plur. { weorðað weorðe
Imperf. sing. 1. wearð	Inf. pres. weorðan
2. wurde	Ger. weorðanne
3. wearð	Part. pres. weorðende
plur. wurdon	P. past (ge-)worden

(²) Comp. throughout G. werden.

XIII.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class, *i* becomes in the imperfect and this in the second person, &c. *i*: the part. past *h* likewise *i*.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scíne ⁽¹⁾	scínd	scán	(ge-)scinen
<i>shine</i>		<i>shone</i>	
wríte	wrít	wrát	writen
<i>write</i>		<i>wrote</i>	<i>written</i>
a-ríse	a-ríst	a-rás	a-risen
<i>arise</i>		<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>
be-swíce	be-swícd	be-swác	be-swícen
<i>deceive</i>			
stíge	stíhđ	stáh	stigen
<i>ascend</i>			
a-bíde	a-bíded	a-bád	a-biden
<i>abide</i>		<i>abode</i>	<i>abiden</i>
grípe	grípđ	gráp	grípen
<i>grípe</i>			
ríde	rít	rád	riden
<i>ride</i>		<i>rode</i>	<i>ridden</i>
spíwe	spíwđ	spáw	spiwen
<i>spew</i>			<i>spewn</i>
wríde	wríđ	wráđ	wríden
<i>writhe, wreathe</i>			

(¹) G. *scheine*, *schien*, *ge-schienen*; *steige*, *stieg*; *greife*, *griff*, *griffen*, &c.

XIV.—*Class III.*

the Third Class, *eó* or *ú* becomes *eá* in the imperative; in the second person &c. *u*: the part. past

3s. pres. (²)	Third pers. <i>rýcđ</i>	Imperf. <i>reác</i>	Part. past. (ge-)ročen
3	<i>scýt</i>	<i>sceát</i> <i>shot</i>	<i>scoten</i> <i>shotten</i>
e	<i>crýpđ</i>	<i>creáp</i>	<i>cropen</i>
3	<i>cýwđ</i>	<i>ceáw</i>	<i>cowen</i>
	<i>lýhđ</i>	<i>leáh</i>	<i>logen</i>
3	<i>flýhđ</i>	<i>fleáh</i>	<i>flogen</i>
e		<i>flew</i>	<i>flown</i>
3		<i>beád</i> <i>bade</i>	<i>boden</i> <i>bidden</i>
	<i>sýcđ</i>	<i>seác</i>	<i>socen</i>
	<i>býhđ</i>	<i>beáh</i>	<i>bogen</i>
end			<i>bown</i>
	<i>lýt</i>	<i>leát</i>	<i>loten</i>
ow			

(²) G. *rieche*, *roch*, *ge-rochen*; *schiess*, *schoß*, &c.

Ceósan to choose, makes third pers. pres. *cýst*; imperf. *ceás chose*, second pers. *cure*, plur. *curon*; p. past *coren*⁽¹⁾.

Seóðan to seethe, has third pers. *sýð*; imperf. *seáð*, *sode*, &c.; p. past *soden sodden*.⁽²⁾ Thus also others in *-san* and *-ðan*.

Fleóge is contracted to *fleó*, plur. *fleóð*, *fleó*; infin. *fleógan*, *fleón*; thus likewise *teógan*, *teón to draw*, *tug*: *wreón to cover*, and *þeón to thrive*, have only the contracted forms.

Seón to see, makes imperf. *seáh* or *séh*, *sáwe* or *sége*, &c. imper. *seóh* or *sýh*; part. present *seónde*; part. past (ge-)sewen, or *segen*.

Ge-feón (-feán) to rejoice, has imperf. *ge-feáh* or *-féh*, *ge-fage* or *-fage*; part. past *ge-fagen*, *-fægen*. *Beón to be*, is defective :

Indic. pres. 1. <i>beó</i> ⁽³⁾	Subj. pres. <i>beó</i>
2. <i>býst</i>	plur. <i>beón</i>
3. <i>býð</i>	Imper. <i>beó</i>
plur. { <i>beóð</i>	plur. { <i>beóð</i>
{ <i>beó</i>	{ <i>beó</i> .

Infin. *beón*. Ger. *tó beónne*. Part. pres. *beónde*.

XV.—*Anomalous Verbs.*

The following verbs are Anomalous, having for their present an old imperfect of the Complex Order, and for their imperfect one formed since after the Simple Order.

(¹) G. *kiese*, *kor*, *ge-koren*.

(²) G. *siede*, *sott*, *ge-sotten*.

(³) G. *bin*, *bist*.

Pres. 1. 3. A'h, 2. áge, pl. ágon (*owe*); imperf. áhte (*ought*); infin. ágan; p. past. ágen: *own, possess*. Likewise combined with ne; náh, náhte, &c.

An, 2. unne, pl. unnon; imperf. úde; inf. unnan; p. past (ge-)unnen: *grant*.

Can⁽²⁾ (*can*); 2. cunne or canst, pl. cunnon; imp. cúde (*could*); inf. cunnan; p. past (ge-)cúð: *know, ken, be able*.

Deáh, duge, dugon; imp. dóhte; inf. dúgan: *be good, brave, worth*.

Dear, dearst, durren; subj. durre: imp. dorste (*durst*); inf. dearan: *dare*.

Ge-man⁽³⁾, ge-manst, ge-munon: imp. ge-munde; inf. ge-munan: *remember*.

Mæg⁽⁴⁾, miht, magon (*may*); subj. mæge (*mage*); imp. mihte (*meahte*) (*might*); inf. magan: *be able*.

Mót⁽⁵⁾, móst, móton; subj. móte; imp. móste: *may, might, must*.

Sceal⁽⁶⁾ (*shall*), scealt (*shalt*), sceolon (*sculon*); subj. scyle; imp. sceolde (*should*); inf. sculan: *owe*.

Wát⁽⁷⁾ (*wot*), wást, witon; imp. wiste (*wisse*) (*wist*); subj. wíte; imper. wíte, wítað; inf. wítan; ger. to wítanne (*to wit*); p. pres. wítende; p. past witen: *know*. Thus also nýtan *to know not*.

(²) Comp. L. novi *I know*; G. kenne, kann, kannte, konnte, &c.

(³) Comp. L. defective me-min-i *I remember*.

(⁴) G. mag, möge, mögte, &c.

(⁵) G. muss, musste, &c.

(⁶) G. soll, sollte, &c.

(⁷) Comp. olda *I know*; G. weiss, wusste, wissen; L. scio; as distinguished from can (cna we) γινώσκω, L. novi.

þearf⁽¹⁾, þearft or þurfe, þurfon; subj. þurfe;
imp. þorfte; inf. þearfan: *need*.

XVI.—*Auxiliaries, &c.*

The A. S. has no future tense, the present serving for both: *wille* and *sceal*, like G. *will* and *soll*, imply will, duty, and the like, and are not used like *will* and *shall*, to form a simple future; the present of *beon* has commonly a future power. The perfect and pluperfect are formed as in English, German, &c. by means of the verb *to have*; as, *ic hæbbe (ge-)lufod I have loved.*⁽¹⁾ The participle past being as in the above-named tongues the only true passive form, the passive tenses are formed throughout by the help of the auxiliaries *wesan*, *weorðan*, and *beon to be*; as, present *ic eom*, or *weorde lufod*⁽²⁾ *I am loved*; imperf. *ic wæs*, or *weard lufod*; perf. *ic eom lufod worden I have been loved*; pluperf. *ic wæs lufod worden I had been loved*; future, *ic beo lufod I shall be loved*.

Impersonal verbs are like those of other languages; as, *hit rind it rains*; *hit ge-limpð it happens*. Some have a passive sense; as, *a-lýfð it is allowed, lawful* (L. *licet*); *ge-wyrð it is agreed, seems good* (L. *convenit*).

⁽¹⁾ G. *darf, dürfte*.

⁽²⁾ The imperfect is often used for the pluperfect.

⁽³⁾ Comp. G. *ich habe, hatte, werde, wurde, ge-liebt*; *ich bin, war, geliebt worden*.

CHAPTER VI.

I.—*Formation of Words. Prefixes.*

As in Greek, Latin, German, &c. this branch of the language must be strictly attended to, if we would learn the origin, gender, and inflection of words: it consists of Derivation, and Composition, in both which the A. S. closely resembles the German. Derivation either modifies the meaning of a word by putting before it a prefix, or changes its part of speech, and inflection, by adding a termination. Composition forms new words by joining one or more together.

The following are the chief prefixes:

un- (on-) (L. *in-*; E. and G. *un-*): un-scyldig (G. un-schuldig) *in-nocent*; un-tigian *to un-tie*.

n- (ne *not*; L. *ne*): n-yllan (for newillan; L. n-olle for ne velle) *to will not, nill*; n-án *none*.

mis- (E. *mis-*; G. *miss-, misse-*): mis-truwian (G. mis-trauen) *to mis-trust*; mis-dæd (G. misse-that) *mis-deed*.

wan-⁽⁴⁾ (wana *wanting*): wan-hál *unhealthy*.

to-⁽⁵⁾ (L. *dis-*; G. *zer-*): to-breca (L. dis-rumpere, G. zer-brechen) *to break in pieces*; to-drífan (L. dispellere, G. zer-treiben) *to scatter, drive away*.

⁽⁴⁾ Hence O. *wan-hope* (D. wan-hoop) *despair*; wan-trust (D. wan-trouw) *mis-trust*.

⁽⁵⁾ Hence O. *to-broken, to-torn* &c. The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *tó*.

for- (') (L. *per-*; E. *for-*; G. *ver-*): for-beód (~~ver~~-bieten) *to for-bid*; for-awerian (L. *per-jur-*) *for-swear*; for-gán *to for-go*; for-bærnian (G. *brennen*) *to burn up, consume*; for-gifan (G. *ver-gebe*) *to give away, for-give*.

wider- (wið *against*; G. *wider-*): wider-saca (wider-sacher) *adversary*.

and- (árr; G. *ant-*): and-wlita (G. *ant litz*) *contenance*.

ge- (G. *ge-*; L. *com-, con-, co-*): has in general a collective sense; as, ge-bróðra (G. *ge-brüder*) *brethren*; ge-scy (G. *ge-schuhe*, F. *chaussure*) *shoes*; ge-mæ (G. *ge-mein*, L. *com-mune*) *common*; ge-fera (G. *fährte*, L. *com-es*) *companion*; it forms active verbs from neuters, nouns, &c. as, ge-standan *to urge*; ge-penc (G. *ge-denken*) *to think of, remember*; ge-strangian *strengthen*; ge-leánian *to reward*; ge-níðerian *to grade, condemn*; from standan, pencan, strang, le (reward), níðer; or gives a figurative sense; as, biddan *to ask, beg*, ge-biddan *to pray*. Many words, however, take ge- without any change of meaning; as, seón, *to see*; híran, ge-híran *to hear, obey*; mearc, ge-mearc *mark, limit*; rúm, ge-rúm *wide, roomy*.

be- (E. and G. *be-*) makes neuter verbs active; gán *to go*, be-gán *to commit*, &c. (G. *gehen*, be-gehen) *to go*, be-feran *to travel over* (G. *fahren*, *fahren*). It is sometimes privative; as, bycgan *to buy*, be-bycgan *to sell*; be-heáfdian *to be-head*: often

(') Hence O. *for-done*, *for-spent*, &c. The prefix *for-* must not be founded with the preposition *for*, which seems not to occur in composi-

tensive; as, reáfian *to rob*, be-reáfian *to be-reave* (G. rauben, be-rauben); be-gyrdan (G. be-gürten) *to be-gird*; or otherwise modifies the sense; as, be-healdan *to be-hold*, be-sprecan (G. be-sprechen) *to be-speak*.

ed- (*again, re-*): ed-niwian *to re-new*.

sin- (*simle always*, L. semper): sin-grén *ever-green*.

sam- (L. *semi-*): sam-cuce(*) *half-quick, half-dead*.

æg- or ge- gives pronouns and adverbs an indeterminate sense; as, æg-hwylc (ge-hwylc) *each, every*, æg-hwider *whithersoever*.

II.—Nominal Terminations.

The following are the chief Nominal Terminations, denoting for the most part persons:

-a(*) : cemp-a *warrior, champion*; hunt-a *hunter*; bog-a *bow*.

-ere : (E. and G. -er; L. -or): reáf-ere (G. räub-er) *robb-er*; sæd-ere (L. sat-or) *sow-er*.

-end (from the part. pres.): Hæl-end (G. Heil-and) *Saviour, healer*; weald-end *ruler*.

-e : hyrd-e *herd, keeper*; sig-e *victory*; riht-wís-e *righteousness*.

-el, -ol, -l (E. -le; G. -el): byd-el (G. bed-el) *herald, bead-le*; gaf-ol *tribute, gav-el*; set-l (G. sess-el) *seat, sett-le*.

-ing: ædel-ing *prince, young noble*; Wóden-ing *son of Woden*; earm-ing *poor wretch*.

(*) Cuc, cucu, cuden, cwic (-e) are also found.

(2) Answering sometimes to L. -o; as, gum-a, L. hom-o *man, groom*; hence brý d-guma G. bräuti-gam, *bride-groom*.

-ling (E. *-ling*; G. *-lein*, *-ling*): cnæp-ling (G. knāb-lein) *little boy*; deór-ling (G. theuer-ling) *darling*.

-incle (L. *-uncul-us*, *-a*): ráp-incle *little rope*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-chen*): mægd-en *maid-en*, from mægð *maid* (G. magd, mäd-chen); cyc-en *chick-en*, from cocc *cock*.

-en (E. *-en*): þeód-en *sovereign*; byrd-en *birth-en*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-in*). Feminines from masculines sometimes change the vowel; as, þen, þin-en *slave, female slave*; fox, fyx-en (G. fuchs, fuchs-in) *fox, vix-en*; sometimes not; as, þeow, þeow-en *slave*. Some change the vowel, and take -e; others change the vowel only; as, mearh, myr-e *horse, mare*; wulf, wyf (G. wolf, wölfin) *wolf, she-wolf*.

-estre (E. and D. *-ster*): sang-estre (D. zang-ster) *song-ster*, from sangere *singer*; sæm-estre *seam-ster*, from sæm-ere *seamer, tailor*.⁽¹⁾

The following denote a state, action, or the like:

-dóm (E. *-dom*; G. *-thum*): wís-dóm *wis-dom*; cyne-dóm⁽²⁾ (G. könig-thum) *king-ship*.

-hád (E. *-head*, *-hood*; G. *-heit*): mæden-hád *maid-en-head*; cild-hád (G. kind-heit) *child-hood*.

⁽¹⁾ In *songstr-ess*, *seamstr-ess*, a Latin-French termination has been super-added. *Huck-ster*, *malt-ster*, *tap-ster*, and the like, are the true feminines of *hawk-er*, *malt-er*, *tapp-er*, &c. *Spin-ster* is yet rightly used.

⁽²⁾ We have confounded *-dom* and *-rie*, but *-dóm* was properly the *offa*, *rank*, *-rice* the territory; thus, *cyne-dóm*, *cyne-ríce* (G. könig-reich); *bisceop-dóm*, *bisceop-ríce*, and the like.

-scipe (E. *-ship*; G. *-schaft*): hláford-scipe *lordship*; freónd-scipe (G. *freund-schaft*) *friend-ship*.

-lác (E. *-lock*): wíf-lác, *wed-lock*.

-að, -oð: hunt-að *hunting*; war-oð *sea-shore*.

-uð, -ð (E. *-th*; G. *-end*): geóg-uð (G. *jug-end*) *youth*; treów-ð *troth, truth*.

-leást (-lýst; from adj. in -leás): gýme-leást *heedlessness*.

-ung, -ing (E. *-ing*; G. *-ung*): hál-g-ung (G. *heiligung*) *hallow-ing*; leorn-ing *learn-ing*.

-nes (-nys, -nis: E. *-ness*; G. *-niss*): car-leás-nes *careless-ness*; ge-líc-nes (G. *gleich-niss*) *like-ness*.

-u, -eo, -o (G. *-e*): hæ-t-u (G. *hitz-e*) *heat*; mænig-eo (G. *meng-e*) *many, multitude*; bræd-o (G. *breit-e*) *breadth*.

-els (E. *-le*; G. *-el*): ræd-els (G. *räths-el*) *ridd-le*; sticc-els (G. *stach-el*) *stick-le, sting*.

-ed: rec-ed *mansion*; eow-ed *flock*.

-m (E. *-om*; G. *-en*): bot-m (G. *bod-en*) *bott-om*.

-ot, -et, -t: þeow-ot, þeow-t *slavery*; bærn-et *burning*.

-d, -t (E. *-th, -d, -t*; G. *-t*): ge-byr-d (G. *ge-bur-t*) *bir-th*; ge-cyn-d *kin-d, nature*; mih-t (G. *mach-t*) *migh-t*.

-ræden (ræd *counsel*): hiw-ræden *house-hold*; mæg-ræden *relationship*.

III.—Adjectival Terminations.

-e: ædel-e *noble*; fæg-e *fated, fcy*.

-ig (E. *-y*, G. *-ig*): dreór-ig (G. *traur-ig*) *drear-y*; bys-ig *bus-y*.

-líc (E. *-like*, *-ly*, G. *-lich*): leóf-líc (G. *lieb-lich*) *love-ly*; wíf-líc (G. *weib-lich*) *woman-like*, *woman-ly*.

-isc (E. *-ish*, G. *isch*): cild-isc (G. *kind-isch*) *child-ish*; Engl-isc (G. *engl-isch*) *Engl-ish*, *Anglo-Saxon*.

-sum (E. *-some*, G. *-sam*): lang-sum (G. *lang-sam*) *tedious*, *long-some*; wyn-sum (G. *wonne-sam*) *amiable*, *win-some*.

-ol (-ul) (L. *-ul-us*): sprec-ol *talkative*.

-en (E. and G. *en*): fleax-en (G. *flachs-en*) *flax-en*; hæð-en *heath-en*.

-bære (beran *to bear*: G. *-bar*): lust-bære (G. *lust-bar*) *pleasant*; wæstm-bære *fruitful*.

-cund (cynn *kind*, *race*): woruld-cund *worldly*.

-iht (G. *-icht*): þorn-iht (G. *dorn-icht*) *thorny*.

-weard (adj. and adv.; E. *-ward*): tó-weard *to-ward*, *to come*; hám-weard *home-ward*.

-feald (E. *-fold*): án-feald *single*, *one-fold*; twi-feald, *two-fold*; manig-feald *mani-fold*.

-leás (E. *-less*, G. *-los*): syn-leás (G. *sünde-los*) *sin-less*; ár-leás (G. *ehr-los*) *void of honour*, *impious*.

-wís (*wise*): ge-wís (G. *ge-wiss*) *certain*; riht-wís *righteous*.

-ern (E. *-ern*): súð-ern *south-ern*.

-tyme: hefig-tyme *troublesome*.

IV.—Verbal Terminations.

-ian (-igan, -igean) forms verbs (I. 1.) from nouns, adjectives, and particles; as, cear-ian *to care*, ge-hýrsumian *to obey*, wíðer-ian *to oppose*; from cearu *care*, ge-hýrsum *obedient*, wíðer *against*.

C, g, n, or s, sometimes stands before -ian; as, gear-*c-ian to prepare*, syn-g-*ian to sin*, wít-n-*ian to punish*, mæ-r-s-*ian to magnify*; from gearu *ready, yare*, syn-*sin, wíte punishment*, mære *great, famous*.

-án is contracted from -angan, -ágan, or -agan, and -ahan; as, gangan, gán *to go*; smeágan, smeán *to consider, enquire*; preagan, preán *to vex*; sleahan, sleán (G. schlagen) *to strike, slay*.

-ón is contracted from -angan, or -ógan; as, fangan, fón *to take*; teógan, teón *to draw, tug*.

-ettan: hál-ettan *to hail, greet*, from hál *whole, hale*.

After c and g, e is not seldom inserted; as, ræc-*ean, picg-ean*, for ræc-*an to reach*, picg-*an to touch, taste, &c.*

Other verbs in general form the infinitive in -an.

V.—Particles.

Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are either primitive words, that is, not to be further resolved in the language treated of, or are formed from nouns (often obsolete), adjectives, &c. governed by a preposition expressed or understood. Of the former kind are nú *now*, geó (iú), *formerly*, eft *again*, get (iet), *yet*, be *by*, &c. for *for*, tó *to*, ac *but*, gif *if*, &c. Of the latter kind, (to take the cases in order) are the accusatives on-weg (a-weg) *a-way*; on-bæc (under-, ofer-bæc) *a-back, back*; (on-)ge-mang *a-mong*; on-gean (a-gen) *a-again, a-against*; ealne-weg *al-way*.

-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,⁽¹⁾ &c.; as, on-riht-e (L. rect-e)⁽²⁾ a-riht *a-right, rightly*; lang-e (L. long-e) *long*; mid-ealle *altogether*; be-dæle *partly*; tó-sóðe *in sooth, truly*; of-dúne, a-dún *a-down, down*; tó-gædere (æt-gædere), tó-somne (æt-somne, G. zu-sammen), *to-gether*.

líc-e (E. -ly; the same, borrowed from adjectives in -líc): sceort-líc-e *short-ly*, strang-líc-e *strong-ly*.

Other ablatives are the conjunctions for-þý *therefore*; (for-) hwý? (*for*) *why?*; datives for-þám *because*, tó-þón-þæt *in order that*, síð-þán (G. seit-dem) *since*.

-um, -on (abl. or dat. plur.): (on) hwíl-um, hwíl on *whilome, whiles*, wundr-um *wondrously*, hwyrt-um *by turns*, sticce-mælum⁽³⁾ *piece-meal*, be lytl-um and lytl-um *by little and little*, furð-um (-on) *even, just*, on-sundr-on *in-sunder, a-sunder*.

-es (genitive): niht-es⁽⁴⁾ (νυκτ-ος, G. nacht-s) *of a night, by night*, will-es *willingly*, néd-es *of necessity, needs*, eall-es *altogether*, nall-es *by no means*, sóð es *of a truth*, tó-gean-es *against*, tó-midd-es *amidst*.

-a, -unga, -inga (perhaps gen. plur.): gear-a *of*

(¹) Those in -h and -u take g and w, as, heáh, heáge; nearu, nearwe: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(²) L. adverbs in -e were perhaps ablatives, like those in -o, as *per-e* and the like.

(³) Stic (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. stück); mæ1 (II. 3) (G. mahl) *meal, time of eating, milking cows, &c.*

(⁴) The proper genitives of niht, willa, and néd (neód) are nihte, willan, néde; at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in -es or s; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in -ος &c. and -is.

fore, son-a *soon*, *forthwith*, eall-unga *altogether*, hol-unga *in vain*, yrr-inga *angrily*.

-an (an oblique case): niw-an *of late*, newly, for-an *before*, on-midd-an, a-midd-an *a-mid*, wið-út-an *without*, búf-an⁽⁵⁾ (for be-úf-an) *a-bove*; a-bút-an (for on-be-út-an) *a-bout*, &c.

Other adverbial terminations are:—

-der (*motion to*): hi-der *hi-ther*, pi-der *thi-ther*, hwi-der *whi-ther*.

-on, -an (*motion from*): heon-on *hence*, þan-on *thence*, hwan-on *whence*.

-r, -ra, -e, &c. (*rest in*): her *here*, þær (para) *there*, hwær (hwar) *where*; inn-e *within*, út-e *without*.

VI.—Composition.⁽⁶⁾

The A. S. language, like the Greek, German, &c. abounds in compound words, of which the last part commonly settles the part of speech. Nouns and adjectives are usually compounded together, and with verbs, without change, as in English, &c.; as, fic-treow *fig-tree*, heáfod-man (G. haupt-mann) *head-man*, captain, heáh-sacerd, *high-priest*, bisceop-ricē *bishop-ric*, stæf-cræft *letter-craft*, grammar, medo-ærn⁽⁷⁾ *mead-hall*, þeow-boren *slave-born*, stede-fæst *stead-fast*, bealo-full *baleful*, snáw-hwít (G. schnee-weiss) *snow-white*, íren-heard (G. eisen-hart) *as hard as iron*, lif-fæstan

(5) D. boven; "Oranje boven!" (6) See Rask, pp. 113—117.

(7) Or -ern; sealt-ern *salt-ern*.

-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,⁽¹⁾ &c.; as, on-riht-e (L. rect-e)⁽²⁾ a-riht *a-right, rightly*; lang-e (L. long-e) *long*; mid-ealle *altogether*; be-dæle *partly*; tó-sóðe *in sooth, truly*; of dúne, a-dún *a-down, down*; tó-gædere (æt-gædere), tó-somne (æt-somme, G. zu-sammen), *to-gether*.

líc-e (E. -ly; the same, borrowed from adjectives in -líc): sceort-líc-e *short-ly*, strang-líc-e *strong-ly*.

Other ablatives are the conjunctions for-þý *therefore*; (for-) hwý? (*for*) *why?*; datives for-þám *because*, tó-þón-þæt *in order that*, síð-þán (G. seit-dem) *since*.

-um, -on (abl. or dat. plur.): (on) hwíl-um, hwíl on *whilome, whiles*, wundr-um *wondrously*, hwyrft-um *by turns*, sticce-mælum⁽³⁾ *piece-meal*, be lytl-um and lytl-um *by little and little*, furð-um (-on) *even, just, on-sundr-on in-sunder, a-sunder*.

-es (genitive): niht-es⁽⁴⁾ (νυκτ-ος, G. nacht-s) *of a night, by night*, will-es *willingly*, néd-es *of necessity, needs*, eall-es *altogether*, nall-es *by no means*, sóð-es *of a truth*, tó-gean-es *against*, tó-midd-es *amidst*.

-a, -unga, -inga (perhaps gen. plur.): gear-a *of*

(1) Those in -h and -u take g and w, as, heáh, heáge; nearu, nearwe: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(2) L. adverbs in -e were perhaps ablatives, like those in -o, as ver-o and the like.

(3) Stic (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. stück); mæ1 (II. 3) (G. mahl) *meal, time of eating, milking cows, &c.*

(4) The proper genitives of niht, willa, and néd (neód) are nihte, willan, néde; at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in -es or s; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in -ος &c. and -is.

(G. *ab-schiessen*) *to shoot off*; *æfter-fyligend successor, one who follows after*; *mid-síðian to travel with*; *undor-spræc conversation apart*; *samod-(sam-)-wyrca to work together, co-operate.*

The preposition *be, bi*, usually becomes *big* in composition; as, *big-spel* (G. *bei-spiel*) *example, parable*; *big-standan* (G. *bei-stehen*) *to stand by*; it may thus be known from the particle *be*, which sometimes becomes *bi*; as, *be-standan, bi-standan* (G. *be-stehen*) *to stand on, occupy*.⁽²⁾ *On* often becomes *an- or a-*; as, *on-bíðan, an-bíðan, a-bíðan to a-bide*. *Æt* and *oð* in composition often mean *from, away*; as, *æt-berstan to burst away, oð-yrnan to run away, escape*, like G. *ent-bersten, -rinnen*.

Particles are also freely compounded together.

Prepositions, and other particles in composition, are often parted from their verb, as in German; but the same rules can hardly be given in A. S.

In general, *þurh, úp, nider, tó, forð, út, in, on, bi (big)* are separable; *a-, an-, be-, ge-, ed-, un-, or-, mis-, oð, and-, wið, sam-, for-, to-,* are inseparable; *æt, of, &c.* are rarely separated.

CHAPTER VII.

I.—Syntax.

THE A. S. Syntax in general resembles that of Greek and German; but it bears the closest likeness, with some remarkable points of difference from that and other

(2) See Formation of Particles.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære tíde þa Gotan wið Rómana-ríce ge-
winn úp-a-hófon, *at that time the Goths raised up war*
against the Roman empire.

þa Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beón
wolde, þá wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte
for-spillan, *when Darius saw that he should be over-*
come, then he would lose his life in the fight.

We sceolon mid biternysse sóðre be-hreow-
sunge úre mód ge-clénsian, *we must with the bitter-*
ness of true repentance cleanse our mind.

Often, however, sentences are in this and other re-
spects framed as in English; and on the whole this part
of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student,
and may be better learned from reading than from any
rules that might be given.

II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Nouns of time answering to the question, "how long?"
are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan *all the week.*

þrý dagas, or þrym dagum *three days.*

Answering to the question "when?" they stand in
the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

þý feordan dógore *on the fourth day.*

On þissum geare *in this year.*

Ussa tída⁽¹⁾ *in our times.*

Measure, value, age, and the like, are used in the genitive; as,

Twegra elna heáh *two ells high.*

Ynces lang *an inch long.*

þreora mila brád *three miles broad.*

Sex peninga wyrðe *worth six pence.*

A'nes geares lamb *a lamb of one year.*

The matter to which a measure, &c. is applied, stands in the genitive; as,

Hund mittena hwætes *a hundred measures of wheat.*

Hund-teontig punda goldes *a hundred pounds of gold.*

It sometimes remains unchanged; as,

Twegen marc gold⁽²⁾ *two marks of gold.*

Quality, praise, or blame, stands in the genitive; as,

A'r-wyrðre ylðo *of venerable age.*

Fægeres and-wlitan *of fair countenance.*

Two ablatives or datives are used absolutely like the L. double ablative; as,

Ge-togene þý wæpne⁽³⁾ *the weapon (being) drawn.*

A-fundenum sceápe *the sheep (being) found.*

Two datives, the latter governed by tó, are used like the L. double dative; as,

þæt he ús tó fultume sý⁽⁴⁾ *that he may be (for) a help to us.*

(¹) Comp. F. de nos temps.

(²) G. zwei mark gold.

(³) L. stricto telo; ove repertâ.

(⁴) L. ut nobis auxilio sit.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære tíde þa Gotan wið Rómana-ríce ge-winn úp-a-hófon, *at that time the Goths raised up war against the Roman empire.*

þa Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beón wolde, þá wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte for-spillan, *when Darius saw that he should be overcome, then he would lose his life in the fight.*

We sceolon mid blternysse sóðre be-hreowsunge úre mód ge-clénsian, *we must with the bitterness of true repentance cleanse our mind.*

Often, however, sentences are in this and other respects framed as in English; and on the whole this part of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student, and may be better learned from reading than from any rules that might be given.

II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Nouns of time answering to the question, "how long?" are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan *all the week.*

Þrý dagas, or þrym dagum *three days.*

Answering to the question "when?" they stand in the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

ƿisig feðera *icy of wings.*

They sometimes take an ablative ; as,

Wintrum geong *young in years.*

Blind bām eágum *blind of both eyes.*

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative ; as,

ƿeáh he him leóf wære *though he were dear to them.*

Eallum and-feng *acceptable to all.*

ƿæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-þensum wære
that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt *useless to every man.*

Derigend-líc býð þe *it will be hurtful to thee.*

Full full, wyrðe *worthy*, scyldig *guilty*, have an
ablative, dative, or genitive ; as,

Full Hálgum Gáste *full of the Holy Ghost.*

Full deádra bána *full of dead bones.*

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes *the workman is
worthy of his meat.*

Se býð dóme scyldig *he shall be guilty of the judg-
ment.*

He is deádes scyldig *he is guilty of death.*

Ge-líc *like*, has a dative or genitive ; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum⁽¹⁾ *they are like the
children.*

Nán man nis his ge-líca *no man is like him.*

The word which determines a comparative stands be-
fore it in the ablative neuter ; as,

ƿrym mundum hýrra *three hands higher.*

(¹) Thus L. similes pueris ; ejus similis.

The means or instrument stands in the ablative ^{or} dative, with or without the preposition mid; as,

Hine mid þý heofon-lícan weg-nyste ge-trym-
mende *strengthening himself with that heavenly viaticum.*

þý betstan leóðe ge-glenged *adorned with the best lay.*

Heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-frætwoðe
she adorned herself with royal attire.

Híg sprecað niwum tungum *they shall speak with new tongues.*

III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

Adjectives in general, especially those denoting want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, and the like, have a genitive case of the noun which defines them, and often stand after it; as,

Feos wana *wanting money.*

Freónda leás *lacking friends.*

Hrægles þearfa *devoid of raiment.*

Earn ætes georn *an eagle eager for food.*

Ac ic heora eom swíðe gifre *but I am very greedy of them.*

Bóca gleáw *skilful in books.*

Un-wís God-cundan Naman *ignorant of the Divine Name.*

Hí næron his ge-myndige *they were not mindful of him.*

Módes blíðe *blithe of mood.*

Síðes wérig *weary of travel.*

Mægenes strang *strong of might.*

I'sig federa *icy of wings.*

They sometimes take an ablative; as,

Wintrum geong *young in years.*

Blind bām eágum *blind of both eyes.*

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative; as,

Peáh he him leóf wære *though he were dear to them.*

Eallum and-feng *acceptable to all.*

Þæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-þensum wære *that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.*

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt *useless to every man.*

Derigend-líc býð þe *it will be hurtful to thee.*

Full full, wyrðe *worthy*, scyldig *guilty*, have an ablative, dative, or genitive; as,

Full Hál gum Gáste *full of the Holy Ghost.*

Full deádra bána *full of dead bones.*

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes *the workman is worthy of his meat.*

Se býð dóme scyldig *he shall be guilty of the judgment.*

He is deáðes scyldig *he is guilty of death.*

Ge-líc *like*, has a dative or genitive; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum⁽¹⁾ *they are like the children.*

Nán man nis his ge-líca *no man is like him.*

The word which determines a comparative stands before it in the ablative neuter; as,

Prym mundum hýrra *three hands higher.*

(¹) Thus L. *similes pueris*; ejus *similis*.

Micle má *much more.*

þý weorðra *so much the worthier.*

Comparatives require either þonne or þe *than*, with nominative, or an ablative or genitive without ; as,

Ge synd sélran þonne manega spearwan, or ge synd beteran manigum spearwum *ye are better than many sparrows.*

Oðer-healf gear læs þe þrittig wintra *a year and a half less than thirty years.*

Se is his mára *he is greater than him.*

Superlatives take a genitive ; as,

Ealra wyrta mæst *greatest of all herbs.*

* * For the Syntax of Pronouns see Chapter IV.

IV.—Syntax of Verbs.

Verbs, as in other tongues, agree in number with their subject ; after ælc þára (þæra) þe *each of them that, every one that*, however, the singular is used, agreeing with ælc and not with þára ; as,

Ælc þára þe tó me cymð (lit. *each of them that cometh—*) *every one that cometh to me.*

Swá ge-býrað ælcum þára þe winð *so it befitteth every one that contendeth.*

With a noun of multitude the verb may be either singular or plural ; as,

þá com micel mænigeo and tó him éfston *then came a great multitude and hastened to him.*

Transitive verbs in general, as in other tongues, govern the direct object in the accusative case ; as,

Lufa þínne nextan *love thy neighbour.*

Seó sá ge-tácnað þás and-weardan *would the sea betokeneth this present world.*

Axian *to ask*, takes a double accusative ; as,

Nán ne dorste hine nán þing máre axian *no one durst ask him anything more.*

Verbs of naming have an accusative of the object named, and a nominative of the name ; as,

Þone un-ge-met líce eargan þú miht hátan hara *the immoderately timid thou mayest call hare.*

Rædan *to rule*, a-bregdan *to draw (a weapon)*, and to-bregdan *to cast off (sleep)*, govern the ablative ; as,

Þenden hí þý rice rædan móston *while they might rule the realm.*

A'n of þám þý sweorde a-bræð *one of them drew his sword.*

Mid-þý heó pá þý slæpe to-bræð *when she then had cast off sleep.*

Verbs of bidding, forbidding, serving, following, obeying, consenting to, opposing, pleasing, trusting, injuring, profiting, escaping from ; likewise for-swerian *to forswear*, cídán *to chide*, árian *to honour*, spare, beorgan *to save, defend*, déman *to judge*, oleccan *to flatter*, *stillan⁽¹⁾ *to still*, fylstan *to succour*, esen-læcan *to imitate*, ge-nea-læcan *to approach*, and heorcnian *to hearken to*, govern the dative ; as,

Un-clænum gástum be-být he *commandeth the unclean spirits.*

Ne for-beóde ge him *forbid him not.*

(¹) The verbs marked thus * sometimes govern the accusative.

Ne mæg nán man twám hláf-ordum þeowian
man can serve two lords.

Heó him þenode *she served him.*

þa sceáp him fyligeað *the sheep follow him.*

þá se wer hýrde his waldende *then the
 obeyed his ruler.*

Gif þú þonne Dryhtne ge-hýrsumast if
then obeyest the Lord.

þes ne ge-þwærede heora ge-þeahte *this (n
 agreed not to their counsel.*

Ge þafiað eówera fædera weorcum *ye consen
 your fathers' works.*

Him ne wið-stent nán þing *no thing withstan
 him.*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had
 posed him.*

Eallum his wordum wið-cwædon and wið wu
on (they) contradicted and opposed all his words.

Pilatus wolde þám folce ge-cweman *Pilate u
 please the people.*

Heó on-gan his wordum truwian *she begu
 trust his words.*

Ne derode Iobe náht þæs deófles costnuna
*fremode the devil's temptation hurt Job no whit
 profited him.*

Hú heó þám feónd-lícum gástum oð-fl
mage how she may escape from the hostile spirits.

Síð-þán hí feóndum oð-faren hæfdon *when
 had escaped from the enemies.*

Ac he sige-wæpnum for-sworen hæfde *but he had forsworn the weapons of victory.*

Gif þín bróðer syngað cíd him *if thy brother sinneth chide him.*

Þú nelt árian þære stówe *thou wilt not spare the place.*

Beorh þínum feore *save thy life.*

Démað him be eówre æ *judge him by your law.*

He wolde him oleccan mid his hearpan *he would flatter them with his harp.*

Yðum stilde *he stilled the waves.*

Him fylston wel gistas síne *his guests succoured him well.*

Uton for-þý ge-efen-læcan þisum men *let us therefore imitate this man.*

Þám deáde ge-nealæcende *drawing nigh to death.*

Ypolitus heora wordum heornade *Hippolytus hearkened to their words.*

Verbs of motion, and likewise on-drædan *to dread*, often have a redundant dative of the subject; as,

Gá þe forð⁽¹⁾ *go forth.*

He him hám-weard ferde *he journeyed homeward.*

Him þá Scyld ge-wát *then Scyld departed.*

He him on-dræt⁽²⁾ monigne feónd *he dreads many a foe.*

Wealdan *to wield, govern*, *on-fón *to receive*, *milt-sian *to pity*, hlystan *to listen to*, helpan *to help*, *ge-lýfan *to believe*, wið-sacan *to deny*, ge-feón *to rejoice at*, *hrinan *to touch*, with its compounds; likewise

(1) Hence "hie thee home," and the like.

(2) O. "I fear me."

wesan *to be*, when implying possession, govern the dative or genitive; as,

Ætla weóld Hunum *Attila ruled the Huns.*

þe on þám dagum ge-weóld cyne-dómes *who those days ruled the kingdom.*

On-fóh þissum fulle *receive this cup.*

þá on-fengon híg þæs feos *then took they the money.*

He miltsað úrum gyltum *he hath compassion on our sins.*

Ge-miltsa mín *have pity on me.*

Hwý hlyste ge him? *why listen ye to him?*

Hlyste he gódes rádes *let him listen to good counsel.*

He him helpa ne mæg *he cannot help him.*

Ge-help þú earmra manna *help thou poor men.*

For-þám-þe þú ne ge-lýfdest mínum wordum *because thou believedst not my words.*

We ne sculon þæs ge-lýfan *we must not believe that.*

Iulianus his Cristen-dóme wið-sóc *Julian denied his Christianity.*

þry-wa þú wið-sæcst mín *thrice thou shalt deny me.*

Secg weorce ge féh *the warrior rejoiced in the work.*

Cwen weorces ge-feáh *the queen was glad of the work.*

Ne him hrínan ne mehte fær-grípe flódes *ne might the sudden gripe of the flood touch him.*

77. Þá æthrán he hyra eágena *then touched he their*

þá him wæs manna þearf⁽¹⁾ *since he had need of*

þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd *the things that are*
the Cæsar's.

Verbs of desiring, needing, tempting, wondering at, using, enjoying, *remembering, *forgetting, caring for, *þeasing* from; together with *cepan to take, keep, &c., wénan to hope for, *neósian to visit, on-byrian to taste, ehtan to persecute, oð-sacan to deny, earnian to earn, deserve, gilpan to boast of, fægnian to rejoice at, *on-drædan to dread; likewise bídian (bídan) to bide, wait for, with its compounds, govern the genitive; as,*

We ge-wilniað frides wið eow *we desire peace with you.*

þæs ic wilnige and wisce *that I desire and wish.*

þæt mæden gyrnde deaðes *the maiden yearned for death.*

Ne be-þurfon læces þa þe hále synd *they need not a leech that are whole.*

U're man-dryhten mægenes be-hófað *our liege lord requires strength.*

Hwý fandige ge mín? *why tempt ye me?*

For-þón ic his cost node *therefore I tempted him.*

We wundriað þæs wlítan þære sunnan *we wonder at the beauty of the sun.*

(1) L. illi hominum opus erat.

Eówre fýnd wafiad eówer *your foes shall be and*
at you.

Brúc pisses beáges, and pisses hrægles neó^{6t}
enjoy this ring, and use this dress.

Ne ge-mune ic nánra his synna *I will remember*
none of his sins.

Ne ge ne ge-pencað þára fif hláfa? *and do ye*
not remember the five loaves?

Þú hæfst þára wæpna for-giten *thou hast forgotten*
the weapons.

Hí þæs ne gýmdon *they cared not for that.*

Feores hí ne róhton *for life they recked not.*

Héddon here-reáfes *they heeded the war-spoil.*

Ge-swíc þínes wópes *cease thy weeping.*

Sceolde æðeling ealdres linnan⁽¹⁾ *the noble must*
part from life.

Hí nánre bricge ne cepton *they kept to no bridge.*

He nolde nánnes fleámes cepan *he would not take*
to flight.

Ne þearf ic ænigre áre wénan *I may not hope for*
any honour.

Ge-wát þá neósian heán húses (he) *then departed*
to visit the lofty mansion.

On-byrige metes⁽²⁾ *let him taste meat.*

Paulus ehte Cristenra manna *Paul persecuted*
Christian men.

Hwá oð-sæcd þæs? *who denies that?*

Seó peód þe his earnað *the people that deserveth it.*

(1) Linnan sometimes has a dative.

(2) We say also "taste of—."

Há ne gilpst þú þonne heora fægeres?⁽³⁾ *boast-
est thou not then of their fairness?*

Ne sceal he fægnian þæs folces worda *he must
not rejoice at the people's words.*

Hig on-dredon þæra Israhela tó-cymes *they
dreaded the coming of the Israelites.*

Se hýr-man his ed-leanes an-bídað *the hireling
awaiteth his reward.*

Verbs of granting, likewise tilian *to till, get*, for-
wyrnan *to deny*, þancian *to thank*, stýrian (stýran)
to chastise, have a dative of the person or near object,
and a genitive of the thing or far object; as,

Se hálga him þæs ge-úðe *the saint granted him
that.*

þá þúhte me hefig-tyme þe þæs tó tidienne
then it seemed to me troublesome to grant thee that.

þá Metod on-láh Medum and Persum aldor-
dómes *when the Lord bestowed the supremacy on the
Medes and Persians.*

þá Noe on-gan him ætes tilian *then Noah began
to get him food.*

þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces weordscipes
who denied him not kingly honour.

Apollonius hire þæs þancode *Apollonius thanked
her for that.*

He him þæs þinges stýrede *he chastised him for
that thing.*

Verbs of depriving, likewise teón &c. *to accuse*,

(3) A neuter adjective used and declined as a noun.

have an accusative of the near object, and an ablative genitive of the far object; as,

Nelle ic þa rincas rihte be-næman *I will not deprive the warriors of their right.*

Heó hit ne mæg his ge-wittes be-reáfian *she cannot bereave it of its understanding.*

Dyrnum ge-þingum be-togen *charged with secret practices.*

Hwý týhð ús úre hláf-ord swá micles false? *why doth our lord accuse us of so great deceit?*

Biddan *to ask for*, has an accusative of the near, and a genitive of the far object; as

Gif his sunu hine bitt hláfes *if his son asketh him for bread.*

Some impersonal verbs govern the person affected in the accusative or dative: hit is often left out; as,

Hyngrað hine⁽¹⁾ *he is hungry.*

Seó swefen þe hine mætte *the dream that he dreamed.*

Hire ge-býrað *it becometh her.*

Hit lícode Herode *it pleased Herod.*

Him þúhte *it seemed to him* (lit. *him thought*).

Ne ge-weard unc wið ænne pening? *did we not agree for a penny?*

Others have beside a genitive of the far object, after rules for other verbs; as,

þone weligan lyst an-wealdes *the rich lusteth for power.*

Nænne mon þæs ne tweoð *no man doubts of that.*

(¹) Comp. G. es hungert ihn; es ge bührt ihr; ihm dünkte.

*þe nánre be-hreowsunge ne be-hófað thou need-
est no repentance.*

*Him þæs ne sceamode of that they were not
ashamed.*

V.—Syntax of Prepositions.

Prepositions, as in German, &c., require various oblique cases of the nouns before which they are placed; thus,

<i>geond through, throughout</i>	<i>ymb(-e)⁽³⁾</i>	} <i>{ round,</i> <i>{ about.</i>
<i>þurh⁽²⁾ through</i>	<i>ymb-útan</i>	
<i>wið-æftan behind</i>		

govern the accusative; as,

*Gá geond wegas and hegas go through the ways
and hedges.*

þurh his micle ge-þyld through his great patience.

Wið-æftan þá burh behind the town.

*Ymb þæs cyninges slege about the slaying of the
king.*

Ymb-útan þone weall around the wall.

The following govern the dative

<i>be (bi, big) ⁽⁴⁾ of, about, by</i>	<i>in-tó into</i>
<i>of off, from, of</i>	<i>ær ere, before</i>
<i>fram from, by</i>	<i>feor far from</i>
<i>æt at, to</i>	<i>un-feor⁽⁵⁾ near</i>
<i>tó to</i>	<i>neah (nean) nigh</i>

⁽²⁾ G. durch.

⁽³⁾ Comp. ἀμφι, L. amb-, G. um.

⁽⁴⁾ Comp. ἐ-πρ, G. bei; ἀπ-ο, L. ab, D. af, G. ab-; L. ad; G. zu, &c.

⁽⁵⁾ Lit. un-far; G. un-fern.

ge-hende <i>near, handy</i>	tó-middes	} <i>amid</i>
æfter <i>after</i>	on-middan	
búfan	} <i>above</i>	} <i>within,</i>
on-úfan		
be-æftan (bæftan)	} <i>abast,</i>	} <i>innan</i> } <i>inside</i>
be-hindan		
	} <i>behind</i>	} <i>foran</i> } <i>before</i>
be-heonan <i>on this side</i>		
bútan ⁽¹⁾ <i>without, outside</i>	tó-weard <i>toward</i>	
be-twynan <i>between</i>	tó-eácan <i>besides.</i>	
tó-emnes <i>along</i>		

Be þám heáh-fædere *concerning the patriarch.*

Be mínes fæder leáfe *by my father's leave.*

Far of þínum lande *depart from thy country.*

Of ánre úp-flóran *off an upper floor.*

Æt þám burnan⁽²⁾ *at the brook.*

Fram cild-háde *from childhood.*

Gá tó þínum húse *go to thy house.*

þá híg in-tó þære byrgene eódon *then they went into the tomb.*

Ær sunnan setl-gange *before the setting of the sun.*

He wæs him feor *he was far from him.*

Un-feor þám húse *near the house.*

Neah þám forða *nigh the ford.*

Ge-hende þære ceastre *near the town.*

Æfter þám ge-feohte *after the fight.*

Búfan þære heofenan *above the heaven.*

Bæftan þære mænigeo *behind the multitude.*

Be-heonan þære stræte *on this side the street.*

(1) D. buiten, O. bout, but.

(2) G. binnen, S. ben.

(3) S. burn.

Bútan þære wíc-stówe *outside the camp.*
 Bútan ælcum an-ginne *without any beginning.*
 Bútan wífum and cildum *besides women & children.*
 Be-twynan þám twám mynstrum⁽⁴⁾ *between the two monasteries.*

Tó-middes þám wæterum *amid the waters.*

On-middan þám treowe *in the midst of the tree.*

Binnan þám ge-telde *within the tent.*

Æt-foran his þrym-setle *before his glory-seat.*

Tþ-weard þám háligdóme⁽⁵⁾ *toward the sanctuary.*

Tó-eácan þám fodre *over and above the fodder.*

Tó sometimes has a genitive ; as,

Tó middes dæges *at mid-day* : likewise in several compound prepositions above and below.

And-lang *along* (like G. ent-lang) governs the genitive ; as,

And-lang þæs wéstenes *along the desert.*

The following govern the accusative or dative ; the former usually, as in Latin, &c., when motion to, the latter when motion from, or rest in, a place, is signified : but this rule is not strictly followed in A. S.

fore ⁽⁶⁾	} <i>before</i>	on <i>on, in, into</i>
be-foran		in <i>in, into</i>
on-bútan <i>about, around</i>		(on-)ge-mang <i>a-mong</i>
oð <i>unto, till</i>		be-tweox ⁽⁷⁾ <i>betwixt, among</i>
úppon <i>upon</i>		úton } <i>outside,</i>
innon <i>within</i>		wiðútan } <i>without</i>

(4) Hence *minster* ; G. *münster* ; all from L. *monasterium*.

(5) Hence O. *halidom* : "by my halidom !"

(6) Comp. *προ*, L. *pro*, G. (be-)vor ; G. *an* ; *ἐν*, L. and G. *in* ; *ὑπερ*, L. *super*, G. *über*, D. *over* ; G. *unter*, *gegen*, &c.

(7) Like *be-twynan* from *twá* ; comp. G. *zwi-schen* from *zwei*.

ofer <i>over</i>	tó-geanes } <i>against,</i>
under <i>under</i>	on-gean } <i>toward</i>
	be-geondan <i>beyond.</i>

Fore Healf-denes hilde-wísan *before Healfdene*
war-chiefs.

þá he þá be-foran þone graman cyning ge-læd
wæs when he then was led before the cruel king.

Ic eom a-send be-foran hine *I am sent before him.*

Be-foran eallum folce *before all the people*

On-bútan þæt cealf *around the calf.*

On-bútan þám weofode *about the altar.*

Oð Rin þá eá *unto the river Rhine.*

Oð Daniele þám witegan *till Daniel the prophet.*

On þá ealdan wísan *in the old wise.*

He sylf oð-fleáh on Asiam *he himself escaped into*
Asia.

On þám heán munte *on the high mount.*

Heó hine in þæt mynster on-feng *she received*
him into the monastery.

In ge-limp-lícre tíde *at a fitting time.*

Ic eow sende swá sceáp ge-mang wulfas
send you as sheep among wolves.

On-ge-mang óðrum mannum *among other men*

Be-tweox his magas *among his kin's-folk.*

Be-tweox þære ealdan æ and þære niwan be
twixt the old law and the new.

þá feoll he úppon hine *then fell he upon him.*

Uppon ánum beáme *upon a beam.*

Heó be-seáh innon þá byrgene *she looked in*
the tomb.

Innon þære healle *within the hall.*

Hí comon ofer þá sæ *they came over the sea.*

Micel man-cwealm be-com ofer þære Roman-
iscere leóde *a great plague came upon the Roman people.*

Under þære fæstnesse *under the firmament.*

Wid-útan his dóm-ern *outside his judgment-hall.*

Wid-útan þám díce *without the ditch.*

Tó-geanes his fýnd he gæð *he goeth against his foes.*

Hí þá ferdon tó-geanes þám hæðenum *they
then marched against the heathen.*

Feohtende on-gear hine *fighting against him.*

þá com him þær on-gear *then came there to meet
him.*

Be-geondan Iordanem *beyond Jordan.*

Be-geondan þám mere *beyond the lake.*

For *for*, and mid⁽¹⁾ *with*, govern the accusative,
ablative, or dative ; as,

For eall Cristen folc ge-biddan *to pray for all
Christian people.*

For þý máne *for that crime.*

For hwylcum intingan? *for what cause?*

Mid þá fore-sprecenan fæmnan⁽²⁾ *with the fore-
said damsel.*

Mid þý áðe *with the oath.*

Mid his ágenum life *with his own life.*

Wid *against, with, &c.* governs the accusative, dative,
or genitive ; as,

Wid þá reáðan sæ *by the Red Sea.*

Wid þín folc *toward thy people.*

þa assan wid hí læswodon *the asses were grazing
with them.*

(¹) Comp. G. für ; μετὰ, G. mid.

(²) L. femina.

A'na wið eallum *alone against all.*

Eáge wið eágan, tóð wið téð *eye for eye, tooth for tooth.*

Wið þæs holtes⁽¹⁾ *toward the wood.*

He éfste wið þæs heres *he hastened against the army.*

A preposition sometimes stands after its case; as,

Hí him mid sæton *they sate with him.*

Him bi twegen beámas stódon *by him stood two trees.*

It is sometimes parted from it altogether, and placed either next before the verb, or last of all; as,

þe he man-cyn mid a-lýsde *with which he redeemed mankind*

þá ge-nea-læhte him án man tó *then drew nigh to him a man.*

Ymb-útan is sometimes divided; as,

Ymb han-cred útan *about cock-crow.*

Wið and weard are sometimes used, the one before, the other after an accusative or genitive; as,

Wið heofonas weard⁽²⁾ *toward the heavens.*

Wið Petres weard *toward Peter.*

VI.—Syntax of Conjunctions.

The following conjunctions require the verb to be in the indicative mode :

and ⁽³⁾ *and.*

eác *eke, also.*

⁽¹⁾ P. holt, G. holz.

⁽²⁾ Comp. the use of L. ad—versus.

⁽³⁾ Comp. G. und, auch, so, da, dann, denn, da—da, &c.

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

swá-swá *so, as*
 -swá so—as

ne } *then*

pá } *when, as*

r-)hwý *why?*

d-þý(-þe) ⁽⁴⁾ } *when,*

d-þám(-þe) } *while*

enden *while*

ð-þán *since*

odde—
 óðer-twega— } odde { *either*
 óðer-þára— } —or
 ge— } ge { *as well—as*
 ægðer-ge, } } *both—and*
 náðer-ne—ne *neither—nor*

swá-þeáh
 (þeáh-)hwæðere } *yet,*
 } *never-*
 } *theless*
 ná-læs—ac *not only—but*

(for-)þý(-þe) } *for, because,*
 for-þám(-þe) } *therefore.*

The following require the subjunctive, though in general, as in Latin, in subordinate prepositions only:

þæt, þæt-te ⁽⁵⁾ *that*

þeáh(-þe) *though*

swylce *as if*

þonne } *when*

hwænne }

hwær } *where*

þý-læs(-þe) *lest*

tó-þón-þæt *in order that*

á-þý-þe *so much the—as* hú, hú-meta *how.*

od(-þæt) *until*
 pá-hwile(-þe) ⁽⁶⁾ *(the) while*
 ær } *ere,*
 ær-þám(-þe) } *before*
 hwæðer(-þe) ⁽⁷⁾ } *whether*
 sam—sam } *(—or)*

gif ⁽⁸⁾ *if*

nemne } *unless*

nymðe }

(4) The particle þe is added or not at pleasure to several conjunct

(5) G. dass, D. dat ; G. doch, wann, wenn, &c.

(6) Hwil is a noun, (n. 3.) *while, time ; G. weile.*

(7) Answering to ποτερον—ή, L. utrum—an ; like these hw

is properly a neuter pronoun.

(8) The conjunction gif has no more to do with the verb gifan

gin has with given, or O. an with unnan.

Hwæt dó ic þæt ic éce lif áge? *what shall I do that I may possess eternal life?*

Íc wát þæt hit býð sáwl and lic-homa *I know that it is soul and body.*

Þeáh hwylc of deáðe a-ríse *though one arise from death.*

Þeáh-þe ic sceal ealle wucan fæstan *though I shall fast all the week.*

Swylce þú hí ge-sceópe *as if thou hadst created them.*

Þý-læs þú þínne fót æt stáne æt-sporne *lest thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

Tó-þón-þæt he his ríce ge-brædde *in order that he might extend his empire.*

A'-þý un-weordra þe hine manige men for-seón *so much the unworthier because many men despise him.*

Oð-þæt þú cume tó þám fyrmestan *till thou come to the first.*

Oð-þæt se A-lýsend com *until the Redeemer came.*

Þá-hwile-þe ge leóht habban *while ye have light.*

Þá-hwile-þe he on life býð *while he is a-live.*

Ær-þám-þe se hana tuwa cráwe *before the cock crow twice.*

Ær-þám-þe ge hine biddað *before ye ask him.*

Þonne þú þe ge-bidde *when thou prayest.*

Þonne he hám cymð *when he cometh home.*

Sege ús hwænne þás þing ge-weordon *tell us when these things shall come to pass.*

Wá is *me*⁽⁴⁾! *wo is me!*

On the other interjections, of which the following are the chief, nothing need be added:

lá! *O, oh, lo!*

ea-lá! *oh, halloo, alas!*

efne! *behold!*

wá-lá-wá (*wei-lá-wei*) *well-a-way!*

hwæt! *lo! indeed!*

Leóf⁽⁵⁾ is used as an expletive; as,

Gea⁽⁶⁾, *leóf, ic hæbbe yea marry have I.*

(4) *ὦταί μοι ἑστῆ.*

(5) Analogous to our P. and familiar use of the word *dear*.

(6) G. and D. *ja*.

CHAPTER VIII.

PROSE EXTRACTS.

N.B. Some words that have already occurred are not explained in the notes to this and the next chapter.

I.—*S. Matthew*, xii. 1—13.

* * The Gospels⁽¹⁾, and parts of the Old Testament, were rendered into A. S. by one or more ecclesiastics named Ælfric, in the 9th or 10th century; the former from the Vulgate, the latter from some other early Latin translation. The sense therefore, differs now and then from that of the original, and of our authorised version.

1. Se Hælend⁽²⁾ fór on reste-dæg⁽³⁾ ofer æceras⁽⁴⁾; sóð-lice his leorning-cnihtas⁽⁵⁾ hyngrede, and híg on-gunnon⁽⁶⁾ pluccian⁽⁷⁾ þa ear and etan.

2. Sóð-lice þa þa sundor-hálgan⁽⁸⁾ þæt ge-sáwon, hí

(¹) The extracts from the Gospels are from Mr. Thorpe's edition, the only one founded on a collation of the best MSS.

(²) Hælend (II. 2.) *Saviour, healer* (G. Heiland), from *hælan to heal*: the Name Jesus is thus rendered throughout the A. S. Gospels.

(³) *Day of rest, sabbath*: rest II. 3; G. rast.

(⁴) Æcer (II. 2.) (*corn*) *field*; ἀγρος, L. ager, G. acker: hence *acre*.

(⁵) *Disciples*: cniht (II. 2.) *youth, servant*; hence *knight*: G. knecht *servant*; comp. L. puer.

(⁶) On-ginnan (III. 1.) *to be-gin*.

(⁷) I. 1. *to pluck*; G. pflücken.

(⁸) Sundor-hálga (I. 2.) *Pharises*, lit. *separate saint*.

Wá is me⁽⁴⁾! *wo is me!*

On the other interjections, of which the following are chief, nothing need be added:

lá! *O, oh, lo!*

ea-lá! *oh, halloo, alas!*

ʃne! *behold!*

ʃa-lá-wá (wei-lá-wei) *well-a-way!*

wæt! *lo! indeed!*

eóf⁽⁵⁾ is used as an expletive; as,

ea⁽⁶⁾, leóf, ic hæbbe *yea marry have I.*

Ὅτι μοι ἔστι.

Analogous to our P. and familiar use of the word *dear*.

G. and D. ja.

CHAPTER VIII.

PROSE EXTRACTS.

N.B. Some words that have already occurred are not explained in the notes to this and the next chapter.

I.—*S. Matthew*, xii. 1—13.

* * * The Gospels⁽¹⁾, and parts of the Old Testament were rendered into A. S. by one or more ecclesiastics named Ælfric, in the 9th or 10th century; the first from the Vulgate, the latter from some other early translation. The sense therefore, differs now and then from that of the original, and of our authorised version.

1. Se Hælend⁽²⁾ fór on reste-dæg⁽³⁾ ofer æcer sóð-lice his leorning-cnihtas⁽⁴⁾ hyngrede, and hi gunnon⁽⁵⁾ pluccian⁽⁷⁾ þa ear and etan.

2. Sóð-lice þá þa sundor-hálgan⁽⁸⁾ þæt ge-sáw

(1) The extracts from the Gospels are from Mr. Thorpe's edition only one founded on a collation of the best MSS.

(2) Hælend (II. 2.) *Saviour, healer* (G. Heiland), from hælán the Name Jesus is thus rendered throughout the A. S. Gospels.

(3) *Day of rest, sabbath*: rest II. 3; G. rast.

(4) Æcer (II. 2.) (*corn*) *field*; ἀγρος, L. ager, G. acker: hence

(5) *Disciples*: cniht (II. 2.) *youth, servant*; hence knight: G. *servant*; comp. L. puer.

(6) On-ginnan (III. 1.) *to be-gin*.

(7) I. l. *to pluck*; G. plücken.

(8) Sundor-hálga (I. 2.) *Pharises*, lit. *separate saint*.

cwædon to him : Nú þine leorning-cnihtas dōð þæt him a-lýfed⁽¹⁾ nis reste-dagum to dōnne.

3. And he cwæð to him : Ne rædde⁽²⁾ ge hwæt Dauid dyde þa hine hyngrede, and þa þe mid him wæron,

4. Hú he in-eóde on Godes hús, and æt þa offring-hlāfas⁽³⁾ þe næron him a-lýfede to etanne, búton þám sacerdum⁽⁴⁾ ánum ?

5. Oððe ne rædde ge on þære æ, þæt þa sacerdas on reste-dagum on þám temple⁽⁵⁾ ge-wemmað⁽⁶⁾ þone reste-dæg, and synd búton leahtre⁽⁷⁾ ?

6. Ic secge sōð-lice eow þæt þes⁽⁸⁾ is mærra⁽⁹⁾ þonne þæt templ.

7. Gif ge sōð-lice wiston hwæt is : Ic wille mild-heortnesse and ná on-sægdnesse⁽¹⁰⁾, ne ge-niðrode ge næfre un-scyldige.

8. Sōð-lice mannes sunu is eac reste-dæges hlāford⁽¹¹⁾.

9. Þa se Hælend þanon fór, he com in-to heora gesomnunge⁽¹²⁾ :

10. Þa wæs þær án man se hæfde for-scruncene⁽¹³⁾

(¹) A-lýfan (I. 2.) *to allow* ; G. *er-lauben*. (²) Rædan (I. 2.) *to read*.

(³) *Loaves of offering, show-bread* ; offering II. 3. hlāf II. 2.

(⁴) Sacerd (II. 2.) *priest* : L. *sacerdos*. (⁵) Templ (III. 1.) *temple*.

(⁶) Ge-wemma (I. 2.) *to pollute, profane*.

(⁷) Leahter (II. 2.) *crime, sin*

(⁸) *This man*.

(⁹) Mære (I.) *great, famous*.

(¹⁰) On-sægdnes (II. 3.) *sacrifice* ; on-secan *to offer*.

(¹¹) II. 2. *lord* ; said to be from hlāf *bread, loaf*, and ord *beginning, origin* ; that is, *giver of bread*. (¹²) *Assembly, synagogue* ; G. *ver-sammlung*.

(¹³) For-scrincan (III. 1.) *to shrink up, wither away* : mark the intensive force of for-.

hand. And hīg ácsodon hine, þus cwedende: Is a-lýfed tó hælanne on reste-dagum? þæt hīg wrégdo⁽¹⁾ hine.

11. He sæde him sód-lice: Hwylc man is of eow, þe hæbbe án sceáp, and gif hit a-fylð reste-dagum of pyt⁽²⁾, hú ne nimð he þæt, and hefð hit úp?

12. Witod-lice⁽³⁾ micle má man is sceápe betera⁽⁴⁾; witod-lice hit is a-lýfed on reste-dagum wel tó dónne.

13. Þá cwæð he tó þám men: Aðena⁽⁵⁾ þíne hand. And he hí aðenede; and heó wæs hál ge-woiden swá seó óðer.

II.—S. Mark, vi. 32.

32. And on scip⁽⁶⁾ stígende, hīg fóron on-sundron on wéste⁽⁷⁾ stówe⁽⁸⁾.

33. And ge-sáwon hīg farende, and hīg ge-cneowol manega, and gangende of þám burgum⁽⁹⁾, þider urnon and him be-foran comon.

34. And þá se Hælend þanon eóde, he ge-seáh mic-e mænigeo, and he ge-miltsode him, for-þám-þe hīg

(¹) Wrégan (I. 2.) *to accuse, be-uray.*

(²) II. 2. *pit, hole*; D. *put*, L. *put-eus*.

(³) *Verily, truly, for, but, therefore*; a common expletive: from *witian* (I. 1.) *to decide.*

(⁴) Vulgate: "*Quantò magis melior.*"

(⁵) Aðenian (I. 1.) *to stretch out.*

(⁶) Comp. *σκαφη*, G. *schiff*, D. *schip*; hence also *skiff*.

(⁷) Wéste (I.) *waste, desert*; G. *wüst*, D. *woest*.

(⁸) Hence *stow* in local names, and *to stow, be-stow*.

(⁹) Burh (p. 19–20), G. *burg* (*πυργος*) a (*fortified*) town, *burgh*.

wæron swá-swá scép⁽¹⁾ þe nænne hyrde nabbað; and
he on-gan híg fela læran⁽²⁾.

35. And þá hit micel ylding⁽³⁾ wæs, his leorning-
cnihtas him tó comon and cwædon:

36. Þeós stów is wéste, and tíma is forð-a-gán⁽⁴⁾;
for-læt þás mænigeo, þæt híg faron on ge-hende túnas⁽⁵⁾,
and him mete bycgon þæt híg eton⁽⁶⁾.

37. Þá cwæð he: Sylle⁽⁷⁾ ge him etan. Þá cwædon
híg: Uton gán, and mid twám hundred penigum⁽⁸⁾
hláfas bycgan, and we him etan syllað.

38. Þá cwæð he. Hú fela hláfa⁽⁹⁾ habbe ge? gáð
and lociað⁽¹⁰⁾. And þá híg wiston híg cwædon: Fíf
hláfas and twegen fixas.

39. And þá be-beád⁽¹¹⁾ se Hælend þæt þæt folc sæte
ofer þæt gréne híg⁽¹²⁾.

40. And híg þá sæton, hundredum⁽¹³⁾ and fiftigum.

41. And fíf hláfum and twám fixum on-fangenum⁽¹⁴⁾,
he on heofon locode, and híg bletsode, and þa hláfas
bræc, and sealde his leorning-cnihtum þæt híg tó-foran
him a-setton; and twegen fixas him eallum dælde⁽¹⁵⁾.

(¹) Two accusatives as with *L. doceo*.

(²) *Lateness, delay*; from *eald*.

(³) For *scēap* · see p. 5.

(⁴) *Gone forth*; “*far passed*.”

(⁵) *Tún* (II. 2.) *village, town*: originally *enclosure, farm*: comp. *G. zaun hedge*; *D. tuin garden*.

(⁶) Comp. *idēu*, *L. edere*.

(⁷) *Syllan* (I. 3) *to give, sell*.

(⁸) *Penig* (*pening*) (II. 2.) *G. penig*.

(⁹) *Gen*: see p. 32.

(¹⁰) *Locian* (I. 1.) *to look*.

(¹¹) *Be-beóðan* (III. 3.) *to command*.

(¹²) II. 1. *hay*; *G. heu*. *Vulg.* “*super viride fenum*.”

(¹³) *By hundreds, &c.*

(¹⁴) *Abl. or dat. absolute*, p. 75.

(¹⁵) *Dælan* (I. 2.) *to deal, divide, distribute*; *G. theilen*, *D. teilen*.

42. And hīg æton þā ealle, and ge-fyllede wurdon.

43. And hīg namon þæra hlāfa and fixa lāfa⁽¹⁾, twelf wilian⁽²⁾ fulle.

44. Sôð-lice fíf þúsend manna þæra etendra wæron.

45. Þā sona he nýdde⁽³⁾ his leorning-cnihtas on scip stígan, þæt hīg him be-foran fóron ofer þone múðan⁽⁴⁾ tó Bethsaida, oð he þæt folc for-lete⁽⁵⁾.

46. And þā he hīg for-let, he ferde⁽⁶⁾ on þone munt⁽⁷⁾, and hine ána þar⁽⁸⁾ ge-bæd⁽⁹⁾.

47. And þā æfen⁽¹⁰⁾ wæs, þæt scip wæs on middre sæ, and he ána wæs on lande.

48. And he ge-seáh hīg on réwette⁽¹¹⁾ swincende⁽¹²⁾; him wæs wider-weard⁽¹³⁾ wind⁽¹⁴⁾: and on niht, ymbe þā feorðan wæccan⁽¹⁵⁾, he com tó him ofer þā sæ gangende, and wolde hīg for-búgan⁽¹⁶⁾.

49. Þā hīg hine ge-sáwon ofer þā sæ gangende, hīg wéndon þæt hit uh-fæle⁽¹⁷⁾ gást⁽¹⁸⁾ wære, and hīg clyp-edon,

(¹) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, remnant*; lāfan (I. 2.) *to leave*; λαιπειν.

(²) Wilia (I. 2.) *basket*.

(³) Nýðan (I. 2.) *to compel*; from neôð.

(⁴) Múða (I. 2.) *mouth of a river*; here *lake*; Vulg. "fretum."

(⁵) For-lætan (II. 2.) *to forsake, abandon*, (G. ver-lassen, D. ver-laaten), send away.

(⁶) Fera (I. 2.) *to go*.

(⁷) H. 2. *munt*: we have "a mountain."

(⁸) Þar=þær, þara.

(⁹) Ge-biddan (II. 1. *reflect*), *to pray*.

(¹⁰) Æfen (II. 2.) *even*, G. abend: -ung (II. 3.) *evening*.

(¹¹) Réwet (II. 2.) *rowing*; rówan (II. 2.) *to row*; D. roeien.

(¹²) Swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.

(¹³) *Adverse, way-ward*; G. wider-wärtig.

(¹⁴) H. 2. G. & D. *wind*; L. vent-us.

(¹⁵) Wæcce (I. 3.) *watch*.

(¹⁶) III. 3. *avoid, pass by*.

(¹⁷) *Unclean*; fæle *pure, faithful*: fæl-s-ian *to purify*.

(¹⁸) Comp. G. geist, D. geest, S. ghaist.

14. Þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwædon: Her is se yrfe-weard⁽¹⁾; cumað, uton hine of-sleán⁽²⁾, þæt seó æht⁽³⁾ úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon⁽⁴⁾ of-alegene. Hwæt déð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymð and for-spild þa tilian, and sylð þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwædon þá híg þis ge-hýrdon · þæt ne ge-weorðe.

17. Þá be-heóld he híg, and cwæð: Hwæt is þæt a-writen is, þone stán⁽⁵⁾ þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þære hyrnan⁽⁶⁾ heáfod⁽⁷⁾?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt⁽⁸⁾; ofer þone þe he fylð, he to-cwyst⁽⁹⁾.

19. Þá sóhton þæra sacerdra ealdras⁽¹⁰⁾ and þa bóc-eras⁽¹¹⁾ hyra handa on þære tíde on hine wurpan⁽¹²⁾; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc: sóð-lice híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tó him cwæð.

(1) *Heir*; yrfe (I. 3.) *inheritance* (G. *erb-schaft*) · weard (II. 2.) *keeper, ward-en, &c.*

(2) *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, beat, slay*; of-sleán *to kill outright*. of- in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

(3) *Æht* (II. 3.) *possession*; from *ágan*.

(4) *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject*.

(5) Comp. G. *stein*, D. *steen*, S. *stane*.

(6) *Hyrne* (I. 3.) *corner*.

(7) *Heáfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

(8) *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter*: Vulg. "*conquassabitur*."

(9) *To-cwysan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *s-squeeze*, comp. *bar, s-par*; *melt, s-melt*; *tumble, s-tumble, &c. &c.*

(10) *Chieff(s) of the priests*.

(11) *Bócere* (II. 2.) *book man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*.

(12) Or *weorpan*; see p. 5.

III.—*S. Luke*, xx. 9—25.

9. He on-gan þá þis big-spel⁽¹⁾ tó þám folce cwedað. Sum man plantode⁽²⁾ him wín-geard⁽³⁾, and hine ge-
sette⁽⁴⁾ mid tilium (), and he wæs him feor manega
tíðum⁽⁵⁾.

10. Þá on tíde he sende his þeów tó þám tilium, þæt
hig him sealdon of þæs wín-geardes wæstmæ; þá swung-
on⁽⁷⁾ hig þone and ídelne⁽⁸⁾ hine for-leton.

11. Þá sende he óðerne þeów; þá beóton hig þone,
and mid teónum⁽⁹⁾ ge-wæcende⁽¹⁰⁾ hine for-leton ídelne.

12. Þá sende he þryddan; þá wurpon hig út þone
ge-wundodne⁽¹¹⁾.

13. Þá cwæð þæs wín-geardes hláf-ord: Hwæt dó
ic? ic a-sende mínne leófan sunu; wénunga⁽¹²⁾ hine hig
for-wandiad⁽¹³⁾ þonne hig hine ge-seóð.

(1) *Parable*: see p. 73. Spel (II. 1.) *story, tale*; hence *spell*.

(2) *Plantian* (I. 1.) *to plant*.

(3) *Vine-yard*; D. wijn-gaard: geard or eard (II. 2.) *yard, (garden), in-
closure, dwelling, country*.

(4) *Ge-settan* (I. 2.) *to furnish, people*: perhaps a mis-translation of
Vulg. "locavit;" we read "let it forth."

(5) *Tilia* (I. 2.) *tiller, husbandman*.

(6) *Tíð* (II. 3.) *time, tide, season*; G. zeit, D. tijd. *For a long time, many
seasons*, Vulg. "multis temporibus."

(7) *Swingan* (III. 1) *to beat, swing*.

(8) *I'del* (I.) *empty, idle, vain*; G. eitel, D. ijdel.

(9) *Teóna* (I. 2.) *injury, wrong*.

(10) *Ge-wæcan* (I. 2.) *to weaken, injure*: wác (G. weich) *weak*.

(11) *Wundian* (I. 1.) *to wound*: wund (II. 2.) *wound*.

(12) *Perhaps*: wénan *to ween, hope, expect*; G. wähnen *to fancy, &c.*

(13) *For-wandian* (I. 1.) *to respect, reverence*.

14. þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwædon: Her is se yrfe-weard⁽¹⁾; cumað, uton hine of-sleán⁽²⁾, þæt seó æht⁽³⁾ úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon⁽⁴⁾ of-alegene. Hwæt déð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymð and for-spild þa tilian, and sylð þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwædon þá híg þis ge-hýrdon: þæt ne ge-weorðe.

17. þá be-heóld he híg, and cwæð: Hwæt is þæt a-writen is, þone stán⁽⁵⁾ þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þære hyrnan⁽⁶⁾ heáfod⁽⁷⁾?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt⁽⁸⁾; ofer þone þe he fylð, he to-cwyst⁽⁹⁾.

19. þá sóhton þæra sacerdra ealdras⁽¹⁰⁾ and þa bóc-eras⁽¹¹⁾ hyra handa on þære tíde on hine wurpan⁽¹²⁾; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc: sóð-lice híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tó him cwæð.

(1) *Heir*; yrfe (I. 3.) *inheritance* (G. *erb-schaft*) · weard (II. 2.) *keeper, ward-en, &c.*

(2) *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, beat, slay*; of-sleán *to kill outright*. of- in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

(3) *Æht* (II. 3.) *possession*; from *ágan*.

(4) *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject*.

(5) *Comp.* G. *stein*, D. *steen*, S. *stane*.

(6) *Hyrne* (I. 3.) *corner*.

(7) *Heáfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

(8) *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter*: *Vulg.* "conquassabitur."

(9) *To-cwystan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *s-squeeze*, *comp.* *bar, s-par*; *melt, s-melt*; *tumble, s-tumble, &c. &c.*

(10) *Chieft(s) of the* priests.

(11) *Bócere* (II. 2.) *book man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*.

(12) *Or weorpan*; see p. 5.

20. þá sendon híg mid searwum⁽¹⁾ þa þe híg nít
wíse leton⁽²⁾, þæt híg hine ge-scyldigodon⁽³⁾, and
þæt híg hine ge-sealdon þám ealdron⁽⁴⁾ tó dóme⁽⁵⁾,
and tó þæs déman⁽⁶⁾ an-wealde⁽⁷⁾ tó for-démanne⁽⁸⁾.

21. þá ácsodon híg hine, and cwædon: Læreow, we
witon þæt þú rihte spricst and lærst, and for nánnum men
ne wandast⁽⁹⁾, ac Godes weg on sóð-fæstnisse lærst:

22. Is hit riht þæt man þám Casere⁽¹⁰⁾ gafol⁽¹¹⁾ sylle,
þe⁽¹²⁾ ná?

23. þá cwæð he tó him þa he heora fæcen⁽¹³⁾ on-
get⁽¹⁴⁾: Hwý fandige⁽¹⁵⁾ ge mín?

24. Y'wað⁽¹⁶⁾ me áne pening. Hwæs an-lícnesse⁽¹⁷⁾

(1) Searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem.*

(2) Who might feign themselves righteous men.

(3) Ge-scyldigan (-ian, see p. 41) (I. 1.) to *accuse*; G. be-schuldigen. Scyld (II. 3.) (G. schuld) *debt, guilt.*

(4) Deliver him to the chief priests: Vulg. "traderent illum principatui."

(5) Dóm (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, power, &c.*

(6) Déma (I. 2.) *judge, doomer, deemer*; hence *doomster* (démostre) properly feminine; see p. 66.

(7) An-weald (II. 2.) *power*; G. ge-walt, fem. another exception to the general rule.

(8) Déman (I. 2.) to *judge*, for-déman to *condemn*: comp. κρινειν, κατακρινειν; G. urtheilen, ver-urtheilen.

(9) The for in for-wandian, is the preposition, not the prefix; the latter is inseparable: see p. 73.

(10) Casere (II. 2.) *Cæsar, Emperor*; G. kaiser.

(11) Tribute, gavel; F. gabelle.

(12) Or; seldom used independently, but often affixed to other conjunctions; see p. 93.

(13) III. 1. *deceit, fraud.*

(14) For on-geat; see p. 5.

(15) Fandian (I. 1.) to *tempt*.

(16) Y'wian (eówian) (I. 1.) to *show*.

(17) An-lícnes (II. 3.) *likeness, image*.

and he, and ofer-ge-writ⁽¹⁾? þā cwædon hīg: þæs Caseres.

25. þā cwæð he tō him: A-gifað⁽²⁾ þām Casere þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd, and Gode þa þing þe Godes synd.

IV.—S. John vii. 14—28. ✓

14. þā hit wæs mid-dæg þæs freols-dæges⁽³⁾, þā eóðe se Hælend in-tō þām temple, and lærde.

15. And þa Iudeas wundredon and cwædon: Hú-meta can þes stafas, þonne he ne leornode⁽⁴⁾?

16. Se Hælend him and-swarode⁽⁵⁾ and cwæð: Mīn lār nis ná mīn, ac þæs þe me sende.

17. Gif hwá⁽⁶⁾ wile his willan dōn, he ge-cnæwd be þære lāre hwæðer heó sīg of Gode, hwæðer-þe ic be me sylfum spece.

18. Se-þe be him sylfum spicð sécd his ágen wuldor⁽⁷⁾; se-þe sécd þæs wuldor þe hine sende, se is sóð-fæst⁽⁸⁾, and nis nán un-riht-wisnes on him.

19. Hú ne sealde Moises eów æ, and eówer nán ne healt þā æ? Hwý séce ge me tō of-sleánne?

(1) III. 1. *super-scription*.

(2) A-gifan (II. 1.) *to render, restore, give back*.

(3) Freols (II. 2.) *feast, festival*.

(4) Leornian (I. 1.) *to learn*; G. lernen.

(5) And-svarian (I. 1.) *to answer*, governing the dative.

(6) *If any one*; comp. L. si quis. (7) Wuldor (-er) (II. 2.) *glory*.

(8) Sooth-fast, truthful, just; fæst forms the second part of several compound adjectives.

20. þá and-swarode seó mænio and cwæð: Deóðð þe sticað on⁽¹⁾; hwa sécð þe to of-sleánne?

21. þá and-swarode se Hælend, and cwæð to him: Ðn weorc ic worhte, and ealle ge wundriað.

22. For-þý Moises eow sealde ymb-snidennesse⁽²⁾; (næs⁽³⁾) ná for-þýg-þe heó of Moises sý, ac of fæderon⁽⁴⁾);

23. And on reste-dæge ge ymb-sníðað man þæt Moises æ ne sý to-worpen⁽⁵⁾; and ge belgað⁽⁶⁾ wið me for-þám-þe ic ge-hælde ænne man on reste-dæg.

24. Ne déme ge be an-sýne⁽⁷⁾, ac démað rihtne dóm.

25. Sume cwædon, þa þe wæron of Ierusalem: Hú nis þes se þe hig sécað to of-sleánne?

26. And nú he spicð open-lice⁽⁸⁾, and hig ne cweðað nán þing to him. Cweðe we⁽⁹⁾ hwæðer þa ealdras on-giton þæt þes is Crist?

27. Ac we witon hwanon þes is: þonne Crist cymð, þonne nát nán man hwanon he býð.

28. Se Hælend clypode and lærde on þám temple, and cwæð: Me ge cunnon⁽¹⁰⁾, and ge witon hwanon ic

(¹) On-stician (I. 1.) *to prick, urge on.*

(²) Ymb-snidennes (II. 3.) *circum-cision*; ymb-sniðan (III. 2.) *to circum-cise*; part. p. -sniden.

(³) Næs (nas) *not*; usually joined with ná.

(⁴) For fæderum; see p. 12.

(⁵) To-weorpan (III. 1.) *to over-throw, cast down, destroy*; L. dis-jicere, G. zer-werfen.

(⁶) Belgan (III. 1.) *to be angry.*

(⁷) An-sýn (II. 3.) *countenance, appearance.*

(⁸) Open (II.) *open*; G. offen, D. open.

(⁹) See pp. 95-6.

(¹⁰) Observe the distinction between cunnon and witan (p. 61, note 7); *me ye know, and ye wot whence I am.*

eom : and ic ne com fram me sylfum, ac se is sóð þe me sende, þone ge ne cunnon.

V.—*Genesis*, ch. xlv.⁽¹⁾

1. Þá ne mihte Iosep hine leng dyrnan⁽²⁾, ac he drát ealle þa Egiptiscan út, þæt nán frende⁽³⁾ man be-twyx him nære;

2. And he weóp, and clypode hlúdre⁽⁴⁾ stefne, and þa Egiptiscan ge-hýrdon, and eal Pharaones hired⁽⁵⁾;

3. And he cwæð tó his ge-bróðrum : Ic eom Iosep ; lyfað úre fæder nú git? Þá ne mihton his ge-bróðru him for ege⁽⁶⁾ ge-and-wyrdan⁽⁷⁾.

4. Þá grétte⁽⁸⁾ he híg ár-wurð-líce⁽⁹⁾, and cwæð : Ic eom Iosep eówer bróðor, þe ge sealdon on Egiptaland⁽¹⁰⁾.

5. Ne on-dræde ge eów nán þing, ne eów ne of-pince⁽¹¹⁾ þæt ge me sealdón on þis ríce ; sóð-líce for eówre þearfe me sende God on Egipta-land.

(¹) This and the following chapter are taken with some alterations from Thwaites's *Heptateuchus*.

(²) *To hide* (I. 2.); *dyrne* (I.) *dark*.

(³) *Fremed, fremd* (I.) *strange, foreign*; G. *fremd*.

(⁴) *Hlúd* (I.) *loud*; G. *laut*, D. *luid*.

(⁵) II. 1. *household*.

(⁶) II. 1. *awe, fear*.

(⁷) *And-wyrdan* (I. 2.) *to answer*; and-wyrd (II. 3.) *answer*; G. *antwort-en*. Ge- is used before no other prefixes but and- and ed-, as should have been stated p. 41, note 2.

(⁸) *Grétan* (I. 2.) *to grieve, salute*.

(⁹) *A'r-wurð-líc* (II.) *honorable*; G. *ehr-würdig*.

(¹⁰) *Land of the Egyptians*: comp. *Engla-land*, &c. p. 72.

(¹¹) (*Hit*) *of-pinceð it repenteth*: L. *pænitet*: see p. 86-7.

6. Nú twá gear wæs ⁽¹⁾ hunger ofer ealle eorðan, and git sceolon ⁽²⁾ fífe on þám man ne mæg náðer ne erian ⁽³⁾ ne ripan ⁽⁴⁾.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-healdene, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban ⁽⁵⁾.

8. Þæt næs ná eówres þances ⁽⁶⁾ ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willan ⁽⁷⁾ hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hiredes hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdre ofer Egipta-land.

9. Farað hræd-líce ⁽⁸⁾ tó mínum fæder, and secgað him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orde eallum Egiptum; beóðað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige ⁽⁹⁾ on Gessen-lande ⁽¹⁰⁾, and beó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna bearn, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hryðer-heorda ⁽¹¹⁾ and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd fíf hunger-gear bæftan ⁽¹²⁾ : dóð þus þæt ge ne for-wurdon ⁽¹³⁾.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid me is, and ge ge-hýrað hwæt ic tó eów sprece.

⁽¹⁾ *Has been* : see p. 62, note 2.

⁽²⁾ *Shall be, are to come.*

⁽³⁾ *To ear, plough* ; L. *arare*.

⁽⁴⁾ I. 2. *to reap*.

⁽⁵⁾ See p. 73.

⁽⁶⁾ *Of your own accord* : see p. 70. Vulg. has "*vestro consilio*."

⁽⁷⁾ *Through whose will* : see p. 31.

⁽⁸⁾ *Quickly* ; = *hraðe* : see p. 25.

⁽⁹⁾ *Wunian to dwell* ; G. *wohnen*.

⁽¹⁰⁾ *Land of Goshen*.

⁽¹¹⁾ *Hryðer* (III. 1.) or, *rother-beast* ; G. *rind*, D. *rund* : mark the *n* dropped and the vowel lengthened : see p. 2. *Heord* (II. 3.) *herd* ; G. *herde*.

⁽¹²⁾ *Behind, to come*.

⁽¹³⁾ *For-weorðan* (III. 1.) *to perish* ; observe the force of the prefix

12. Cýðað mínum fæder eal mín wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egipta-lande: éfstað and lædað hine tó me.

14. And he clypte⁽¹⁾ heora ælcne, and cyste⁽²⁾ híg.

15. And weóp: æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecað wið hine.

16. Þá spræc man ofer-eal⁽³⁾, and wið-mærsode⁽⁴⁾ þæt Iosepes bróðru comon tó Pharaone, and Pharao wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beád Iosepe þæt he bude his bróðrum and þus cwæde: Sýmað⁽⁵⁾ eówre assan, and farað tó Chanaan-lande.

18. And nimað þær eówerne fæder, and eówere mægða⁽⁶⁾, and cumað tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle Egipta gód.

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas⁽⁷⁾ tó hyra cilda fare⁽⁸⁾ and tó hyra ge-mæccena⁽⁹⁾, and beód him eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hider swá híg hraðost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing⁽¹⁰⁾ of eówrum yddisce⁽¹¹⁾, for-þám ealle Egipta spéda⁽¹²⁾ beóð eówre.

21. Israeles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(1) Clyppan (I. 2.) *to embrace, clip.*

(2) Cyssan (I. 2.) *to kiss*; G. küssen. (3) *Everywhere*; G. über-all.

(4) Wið-mærsian *to noise, spread abroad*; from wið and mære.

(5) Sýman (I. 2.) *to load.* (6) Mægð (II. 3.) *family, household, tribe.*

(7) Wægn, wæn (II. 2.) *wagon, wain*; G. wagen.

(8) Far (II. 3.) *going, journey*; hence *fare.*

(9) Ge-mæcca, -e (I. 2, 3.) *husband, wife, companion, mate*; O. *make.*

(10) Vulg. "Nec dimittatis quicquam."

(11) Yddisc *food*, from etan; hence P. eddish, ashes, &c. *feed for cattle, after-grass, stubble.*

(12) Spéd *wealith.*

6. Nú twá gear wæs⁽¹⁾ hunger ofer ealle eorðan, and git sceolon⁽²⁾ fífe on þám man ne mæg náðer ne erian⁽³⁾ ne ripan⁽⁴⁾.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-healdene, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban⁽⁵⁾.

8. Þæt næs ná eówres þances⁽⁶⁾ ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willan⁽⁷⁾ hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hiredes hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdre ofer Egipta-land.

9. Farað hræd-líce⁽⁸⁾ tó mínum fæder, and secgað him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orde eallum Egiptum; beóðað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige⁽⁹⁾ on Gessen-lande⁽¹⁰⁾, and beó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna bearn, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hryðer-heorda⁽¹¹⁾ and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd fíf hunger-gear bæftan⁽¹²⁾ : dóð þus þæt ge ne for-wurdon⁽¹³⁾.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid me is, and ge ge-hýrad hwæt ic tó eów sprece.

(1) *Has been* : see p. 62, note 2.

(2) *Shall be, are to come.*

(3) *To ear, plough* ; L. *arare*.

(4) *I. 2. to reap.*

(5) See p. 73.

(6) *Of your own accord* : see p. 70. Vulg. has "*vestro consilio*."

(7) *Through whose will* : see p. 31.

(8) *Quickly* ; = *hraðe* : see p. 25.

(9) *Wunian to dwell* ; G. *wohnen*.

(10) *Land of Goshen.*

(11) *Hryðer* (III. 1.) *ox, rother-beast* ; G. *rind*, D. *rund* : mark the *n* dropped and the vowel lengthened : see p. 2. *Heord* (II. 3.) *herd* ; G. *herde*.

(12) *Behind, to come.*

(13) *For-weorðan* (III. 1.) *to perish* ; observe the force of the prefix *for-*.

12. Cýðað mínum fæder eal mín wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egipta-lande: éfstað and lædað hine tó me.

14. And he clypte⁽¹⁾ heora ælcne, and cyste⁽²⁾ híg.

15. And weóp: æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecað wið hine.

16. Þá spræc man ofer-eal⁽³⁾, and wíð-mærsode⁽⁴⁾ þæt Iosepes bróðru comon tó Pharaone, and Pharao wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beád Iosepe þæt he buðe his bróðrum and þus cwæde: Sýmað⁽⁵⁾ eówre assan, and farað tó Chanaan-lande.

18. And nimað þær eówerne fæder, and eówere mægða⁽⁶⁾, and cumað tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle Egipta gód.

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas⁽⁷⁾ tó hyra cilda fare⁽⁸⁾ and tó hyra ge-mæccena⁽⁹⁾, and beód him eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hider swá híg hraðost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing⁽¹⁰⁾ of eówrum yddisce⁽¹¹⁾, for-þám ealle Egipta spéda⁽¹²⁾ beód eówre.

21. Israeles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(1) Clyppan (I. 2.) *to embrace, clasp.*

(2) Cyssan (I. 2.) *to kiss*; G. küssen. (3) *Everywhere*; G. über-all.

(4) Wíð-mærsian *to noise, spread abroad*; from wíð and mære.

(5) Sýman (I. 2.) *to load.* (6) Mægð (II. 3.) *family, household, tribe.*

(7) Wægn, wæn (II. 2.) *wagon, wain*; G. wagen.

(8) Far (II. 3.) *going, journey*; hence *fare.*

(9) Ge-mæcca, -e (I. 2, 3.) *husband, wife, companion, mate*; O. *make.*

(10) Vulg. "Nec dimittatis quicquam."

(11) Yddisc *food*, from etan; hence P. *eddis*h, ashes, &c. *feed for cattle*, after-grass, stubble.

(12) Spéd *wealth.*

Iosep him sealde wænas eal-swá Pharao him beád, and fór-mete⁽¹⁾,

22. And sealde hyra ælcum twá scrúd⁽²⁾; and he sealde Beniamine fíf scrúd, and þreo hundred sylfringa⁽³⁾.

23. And he sende his fæder tyn assan þe wæron gesýmed mid feo, and mid hrægle⁽⁴⁾, and mid Egipta welon⁽⁵⁾, and tyne þe bæron hwæte and hláf.

24. Witod-líce he let þá his ge-bróðru faran, and cwæð tó him : Ne for-læte ge nán þing⁽⁶⁾ be wege, ac beóð swiðe ge-sóme⁽⁷⁾.

25. Híg foron of Egipta-lande, and comon tó Chanaan-lande tó Iacobe hyra fæder,

26. And cwædon tó him : Iosep lyfað þín sunu, and wealt ealles Egipta-landes. Þá Iacob þæt ge-hýrde þá þúhte him swylce he of hefigum slápe a-wacode,

27. And þeáh he him ne ge-lýfde, híg rehton⁽⁸⁾ him hyra færeld⁽⁹⁾ be ende-byrdnesse⁽¹⁰⁾ and þá he ge-seáh þa wænas, and ealle þa þing þe him ge-sende wæron, his gást weard ge-ed-cwicod⁽¹¹⁾,

(1) "Provision for the way;" fór (II. 3.) *journey*; mete (II. 2.) *meat*.

(2) Vulg. "stolas;" "changes of raiment;" scrúd (II. 1.) *garment*, shroud.

(3) Sylfring (II. 2.) "piece of silver."

(4) Hrægl (II. 2.) *raiment, garment*; hence night-rail.

(5) Wela (I. 2.) *weal, wealth*: pl. *riches, prosperity*.

(6) Perhaps repeated by mistake from v. 5. Vulg. has here "Ne irascamini:" we "see that ye fall not out."

(7) Mild, gentle.

(8) Reccan (II. 2.) *to relate*.

(9) Going, journey, or perhaps, *how they had fared*.

(10) In order, succession: Vulg. "Illi econtra referebant omnem ordinem rei."

(11) Ge-ed-cwician *to make alive again, quicken*, cwic, cuc, &c. *quick, living*.

28. And he cwæð: Ge-noh ic hæbbe gif Iosep mín sunu gyt leofað; ic fare and ge-seó hine ær-þám-þe ic swelte⁽¹⁾.

VI.—*Exodus*, ch. xxiii.⁽²⁾

1. Ne under-föh⁽³⁾ leáse⁽⁴⁾ ge-witnesse⁽⁵⁾.
2. Ne fylig⁽⁶⁾ þú þám folce þe yfel wille dón, ne be-foran manegon sóðes ne wanda⁽⁷⁾.
3. Ne miltsa⁽⁸⁾ þú þearfan⁽⁹⁾ on dóme.
4. Gif þú ge-méte þínes feóndes oxan odðe assen, læd hine tó him.
5. Gif þú ge-seó his assan licgan under byrðene⁽¹⁰⁾, ne gá þú þanon, ac hefe hine úp mid him.
6. Ne þú ne wauda on þearfan dóme.
7. Fleóh⁽¹¹⁾ leásunga⁽¹²⁾; un-scyldigne and riht-wísne ne of-sléh þú.

(¹) Sweltan (III. 1.) *to die*.

(²) This chapter is imperfect in several places, and the 30th verse is wanting.

(³) Under-fangan, -fón (II. 2.) *to undertake, receive*.

(⁴) Leás (I.) *false, lying*. (⁵) Witness, testimony. (⁶) See p. 42.

(⁷) Wandian *to fear*, &c. : *shrink not, decline not from the truth through fear*.

(⁸) Miltisan *to pity*; from milde. (⁹) Þearf (I.) *poor*.

(¹⁰) Byrðen (II. 3.) *burthen*; G. *bürde*: from *beran*.

(¹¹) Fleógan, fleón (II. 2.) *to flee, fly*; G. *fliehen, fliegen*.

(¹²) Either sing, or plur. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the oblique cases singular in -a. Leásung *leasing, lying*, from leás.

8. Ne nim þú lác⁽¹⁾ þa a-blendað gleáwne⁽²⁾, and a-wendað⁽³⁾ riht-wísra word.

9. Ne beó þú æl-þeódigum⁽⁴⁾ gram⁽⁵⁾, for-þám ge wæron æl-þeódie on Egipta-lande.

10. Sáw⁽⁶⁾ six ger⁽⁷⁾ þín land, and gadera⁽⁸⁾ his wæstmas,

11. And læt hit restan on þám seofodan, þæt pearfan eton þær-of, and wild-deór⁽⁹⁾ : dó swá on þínum wínearde, and on þínum ele-beámon⁽¹⁰⁾.

12. Wyrç six dagas, and ge-swíc⁽¹¹⁾ on þám seofodan, þæt þín oxa and þín assa híg ge-reston, and þæt þínre wylne sunu sý ge-hyrt⁽¹²⁾, and se útan-cumena⁽¹³⁾.

13. Healdað ealle þa þing þe ic eów sæde, and ne swerie ge þurh útan-cumenra goda naman.

14. Þrywa on gere ge-wurðiað⁽¹⁴⁾ mínne freols.

15. Þú ytst þeorf-symbel⁽¹⁵⁾; seofon dagas ge etað

(¹) *Gifts*, here neuter II. 1., but see p. 9.

(²) *Gleáw* (I.) *skilful, clever*; G. *klug*.

(³) *A-wendan* (I. 2.) *to turn away, sub-vert, per-vert*; G. *ab-wenden*: the prefix *a-* sometimes has the force of *of-*.

(⁴) *Æl-þeódig* (II.) *foreign, strange*; *æl-* is here = *ἀλλ-ος*, L. *al-ius*, *alienus*; and not to be confounded with *æl* for *eal*, in *æl-mihtig*, *æl-beorht* and the like.

(⁵) *Angry, cruel*. Vulg. "*molestus*."

(⁶) *Sáwan* (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. *sähen*.

(⁷) = *gear*, see p. 5.

(⁸) *Gaderian* *to gather*.

(⁹) *Wild beasts*.

(¹⁰) *Olive-trees*; *ele oil*, *beám beam, trees*; G. *baum*, D. *boom*, whence *boom*.

(¹¹) *Ge-swícan* (III. 2.) *to cease*.

(¹²) *Ge-hyrtan* (I. 2.) *to encourage, hearten, strengthen*, from *heorte*.

(¹³) *Stranger, one come from without*; *ít-on*, see p. 71.

(¹⁴) *Ge-weorðian* (*wurðian*) *to honour, ex-ultate*; G. *würdigen*.

(¹⁵) *Feast of unleavened bread*.

þeorf, swá ic þe be-beád, on þæs monðes tíð níwra⁽¹⁾ wæstmā, þā þú út-fóre of Egipta-lande : ne cymst þú bútan ælmyssan⁽²⁾ on míne ge-sýhðe.

16. Heald þā symbel tíðe þæs monðes frum-sceatta⁽³⁾ þínes weorces þe þú on lande sæwst, and on geres útgange⁽⁴⁾, þonne þú ge-gaderast þíne wæstmas tó-gædre.

17. Þrywa on gere æle wæpned-man⁽⁵⁾ æt-ýwð⁽⁶⁾ be-foran Dryhtne⁽⁷⁾.

18. Ne offra þú þínre on-sægdnesse blóð⁽⁸⁾ úppan beorman⁽⁹⁾, ne se rysel⁽¹⁰⁾ ne be-lýfd⁽¹¹⁾ oð morgen⁽¹²⁾.

19. Bring þíne frum-sceattas tó Godes húse.

20. Nú ic sende mínne engel þæt he þe læde in-tó þære stówe þe ic ge-gearwode⁽¹³⁾.

21. Gým⁽¹⁴⁾ his, and ge-hýr his stemne⁽¹⁵⁾, for-þám

(1) Níwe (I.) *new*; νεος, L. novus, G. neu, D. nieuw.

(2) Ælmyse (I. 3.) *alms*; (S. awmous;) *gift* would here have been better.

(3) *First fruits*; fruma *beginning*, sceat (II. 2.) *coin, value, profit, &c.* hence *shot, scot*: G. schatz *treasure*.

(4) Ut-gang (II. 2.) *out-going, end*; G. aus-gang.

(5) Lit. *weaponed-man*; the common use of this word for *male* is a strong proof of the warlike habits of our A. S. forefathers.

(6) Æt-ýwan (-ian, -eówian) (I. 2.) *to appear, show, &c.*

(7) Dryhten (II. 2.) *Lord, chief*; dryht (II. 3.) *troop, band*.

(8) Blóð (II. 1.) *blood*; G. blut, D. blood.

(9) Beorme (I. 3.) *barm, leaven, leavened bread*. (10) II. 2. *fat*.

(11) Be-lýfan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.

(12) Morgen, mergen, merigen (II. 2.) *morn, morrow*; G. and D. morgen.

(13) Gearwian *to prepare, make yare or ready*.

(14) Gýmā (I. 2.) *to take care of, care for, herd, attend to*.

(15) Stemn = stefn *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

he ne for-gifð þonne ge syngiað, and mín nama is on him.

22. Ic beo þínra feónða feond,

23. And þe in ge-læde tó Amorrea lande.

24. Ne ge-eað-méd⁽¹⁾ þú hira godas, ac to-brec hira an-lícnessa.

25. þeowiað Dryhtne : ic ge-bletsie eow, and dó sælce un-trumnesse fram eow,

26. And ge-ice⁽²⁾ eower dagas,

27. And a-flýme⁽³⁾ þíne fýnd be-foran þe ;

28. And ic a-sende hyrnetta⁽⁴⁾, þe aflýmað Efeum⁽⁵⁾ and Chananeum,

29. Twelf monðum ær þú in-fare.

* * * * *

31. Ic sette þíne ge-mæro⁽⁶⁾ fram þære Reádan⁽⁷⁾ Sæ oð Palastinas Sæ, and fram þam wéstene oð þæt flód.

32. Nafa þú náne sibbe⁽⁸⁾ wið hira godas,

33. þý-læs híg þe be-swicon⁽⁹⁾.

(¹) Eað-médan (eað-) (I. 2.) *to humble one-self, worship, "bow down to:"* from eað and mód.

(²) Ge-ícan (I. 2.) *to increase, lengthen, eke out ;* from eac.

(³) A-flýman (I. 2.) *to put to flight, from fleám flight.*

(⁴) Hyrnet hornet.

(⁵) *The Hivite ;* Vulg. "Hevæum."

(⁶) Ge-mære (III. 1.) *boundary ;* P. *meer.*

(⁷) Reád (I.) *red ;* G. roth, D. rood.

(⁸) Sib (II. 3.) *peace.*

(⁹) Be-swícan (III. 2.) *to deceive.*

VII.—*Saxon Chronicle* ⁽¹⁾.

* * The Saxon Chronicle is a series of annals of A. S. affairs, from the earliest times to A.D. 1154, compiled by Monks.

Brytene ⁽²⁾ ig-land ⁽³⁾ is eahta hund mila lang and twá hund mila brád; and her syndon on þám ig-lande fíf ge-þeóda ⁽⁴⁾, Englisc, and Bryt-Wylisc ⁽⁵⁾, and Scytt-sc ⁽⁶⁾, and Pyhtisc ⁽⁷⁾, and Bóc-leden ⁽⁸⁾. Æ'rost wæron nūgend ⁽⁹⁾ þisses landes Bryttas ⁽¹⁰⁾ þa comon of Armo-ica ⁽¹¹⁾, and ge-sæton ⁽¹²⁾ súðan-weard Brytene ærost.

A.D. 449. Her ⁽¹³⁾ Martianus and Valentinianus on-ængon rice ⁽¹⁴⁾, and ricsodon seofon winter. On heora lagum Hengest ⁽¹⁵⁾ and Horsa fram Wyrðgeorne ⁽¹⁶⁾ ge-aððode ⁽¹⁷⁾ Brytta cyninge tó fultume, ge-sóhton ⁽¹⁸⁾ Brytene on þám stede ⁽¹⁹⁾ þe is ge-nemned Yp-wines-ðeót ⁽²⁰⁾, ærost Bryttum tó fultume, ac hí eft ⁽²¹⁾ on hí ⁽²²⁾

⁽¹⁾ Taken with some slight changes from the edition of Dr. Ingram, President of Trinity College, Oxford. ⁽²⁾ II. 2. *Britain*.

⁽³⁾ Ig-land, ea-land, (II. 1.) e, *iland*; G. ei-land, D. ey-land: *island* has arisen from a confusion with *isle*, (L. *insula*, G. *insel*, F. *isle*, *île*) with which it has no connexion. ⁽⁴⁾ Ge-þeód (II. 3.) *nation*.

⁽⁵⁾ Lit. *British-Welsh*.

⁽⁶⁾ *Scottish*.

⁽⁷⁾ *Pictish*.

⁽⁸⁾ *Book-Latin, Roman*.

⁽⁹⁾ For búend (II. 2.) *inhabitants*: see p. 15.

⁽¹⁰⁾ Brytte (II. 2.) *Briton*.

⁽¹¹⁾ A various reading has *Armenia*.

⁽¹²⁾ Ge-sittan (II. 1.) *to occupy, settle in*.

⁽¹³⁾ Here and below means *this year*.

⁽¹⁴⁾ *The Roman Empire*.

⁽¹⁵⁾ II. 2. Not *Hengist* as commonly spelt; *horse*, G. *hengst*. Horsa too meant the same. ⁽¹⁶⁾ *Vortigern*. ⁽¹⁷⁾ *Laðian* (I. 1.) *to invite*, G. *laden*.

⁽¹⁸⁾ *Sécan* is here *to go to*; comp. the use of L. *petere*.

⁽¹⁹⁾ II. 2. *Place, stead*; G. *statt, stätte*.

⁽²⁰⁾ *Ebb's-et* in the Isle of Thanet; *ðeót stream, creek*; *fleet* is common in locname.asl ⁽²¹⁾ *Again, afterwards*. ⁽²²⁾ *Against them*; in eo

fuhton. Se cing hét hí feohtan on-gean Pyhtas, and hí swá dydon, and sige⁽¹⁾ hæfdon swá-hwar-swá comon. Hí þá sendon tó Angle⁽²⁾ and héton heom sendan máre fultum, and heom secgan Bryt-Walena⁽³⁾ náhtnesse⁽⁴⁾, and þæs landes cysta⁽⁵⁾. Hí þá senda heom máre fultum: þá comon þa men of þrym mægðum Germanie⁽⁶⁾:—of Eald-Seaxum⁽⁷⁾, of Englum⁽⁸⁾, of Iótum⁽⁹⁾. Of Iótum comon Cant-ware⁽¹⁰⁾, and Wiht-ware, þæt is seó mæð⁽¹¹⁾ þe nú eardað⁽¹²⁾ o Wiht⁽¹³⁾, and þæt cyn on West-Seaxum⁽¹⁴⁾ þe ma git hæť Iótena-cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum comon Eás Seaxan⁽¹⁵⁾, and Súd-Seaxan⁽¹⁶⁾, and West-Seaxan. (

(¹) II. 2. *victory*; G. *sieg*.

(²) Engle, Angle (Ongle) (II. 2.) *country of the Angles*, the present Sleswig.

(³) Bryt-Wala (I. 2.) lit. *British-Welshman*: the Anglo-Saxons call all not of Gothic race Wala or Wealas, equivalent to *strangers* or *foreigners*, and the Germans still keep up the same idea, calling the French and Italians *Wälschen*, and anything strange or outlandish *wälsch*.

(⁴) Náhtnes (II. 3.) *goodness for naught, cowardice*.

(⁵) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence*; pl. cysta *good things, abundance*.

(⁶) Gen. of Germania; see p. 13.

(⁷) Seaxa (I. 2.) *Saxon*: the Old-Saxon dialect nearly resembled the A.

(⁸) See p. 19.

(⁹) Ióta, Iúta (I. 2); the Jutes occupied the present Jutland, which was bounded to the south by Angle; the Old-Saxons' land, now Holstein, lay still further southward.

(¹¹) = mægð, p. 5.

(¹⁰) *Dwellers in Kent*: see p. 20.

(¹²) Eardian *to dwell*, from eard.

(¹³) Or Wiht-land *Isle of Wight*.

(¹⁴) The West-Saxons occupied Berks, Hants, Wilts, Dorset, and parts of Somerset and Devon.

(¹⁵) The East-Saxons occupied Essex, as the name implies, Middlesex and part of Herts.

(¹⁶) The South-Saxons had Sussex, named after them, and Surrey.

Engle comon (se á síð-þán stód wéstig⁽¹⁾) be-twyx
 6tum and Seaxum) Eást-Engle⁽²⁾, Middel-Engle⁽³⁾,
 ƿearce⁽⁴⁾, and ealle Nord-Ymbra⁽⁵⁾. * * *

A.D. 596. Her Gregorius Papa sende tó Brytene
 augustinum, mid wel monegum⁽⁶⁾ munucum⁽⁷⁾ þa
 lodes word sceoldon bodian⁽⁸⁾ Angel-cynne. * *

A.D. 806. Her se mona a-þýstrode⁽⁹⁾ on kalendis
 septembris⁽¹⁰⁾. Eád-wulf Norda-Hymbra cyning
 ƿæs of his ríce a-drifen, and Heard-byrht bisceop on
 lagustealdes-e⁽¹¹⁾ forð-ferde⁽¹²⁾. Eác on þissum
 lean geare pridie nonas Iunii⁽¹³⁾ róde-tácen⁽¹⁴⁾ weard
 t-eowed⁽¹⁵⁾ on þám monan, ánes Wódnes-dæges⁽¹⁶⁾,

(¹) *Waste, desert.*

(²) East Anglia comprised Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge.

(³) The Middle Angles had Salop, Worcester, Warwick, Gloucester, &c.

(⁴) Mercia included the remaining midland counties, together with
 Chester, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln.

(⁵) Northumbria consisted of York, Lancaster, and the other northern
 counties: as these were united or divided into two kingdoms, Saxon
 England formed either a heptarchy or an octarchy.

(⁶) *Very many, a good number.*

(⁷) Munuc (II. 2.) *monk*; G. *mönch*, L. *monachus*.

(⁸) *To announce, proclaim, preach*; hence *to bode*: *boda messenger*; G. *bote*,
 D. *boode*.

(⁹) A-þýstrian *to become dark, be eclipsed*, from þýstru (p. 10.); þýster
dark; G. *düster*.

(¹⁰) *Sept. 1.*: the Roman name for the day of the month was used
 sometimes, but not always: see p. 36.

(¹¹) *Hexham.*

(¹²) *Went forth, departed, died.*

(¹³) *June 4.*

(¹⁴) *Sign of the Cross*; ród (II. 3.) *rood, Cross*; tácen *token, sign*; G.
zeichen, D. *teeken*.

(¹⁵) *At-* for *æt-*; see p. 4.

(¹⁶) "*Of a Wednesday*," as we still say.

innan þære dagine⁽¹⁾; and eft on þissum gear⁽²⁾ tertio kalendas Septembris⁽²⁾ án wundor-lic trendel⁽³⁾ weard at-eowed a-bútan þære sunnan. * *

And þý ylcan geare (A.D. 853.) sende Ædel-wulf cyning Ælf-red his sunu tó Rome, (þá wæs þonne Leo⁽⁴⁾ Papa on Rome) and he hine tó cyninge ge-hálgode, and hine him tó bisceop-suna ge-nam⁽⁵⁾. *

A.D. 871. þá feng Ælf-red Ædel-wulf-ing⁽⁶⁾ tó⁽⁷⁾ West-Seaxna rice; and þæs ymb ænne monað⁽⁸⁾ ge-feaht Ælf-red cyning wið ealne þone here⁽⁹⁾ lytle werode⁽¹⁰⁾ æt Wil-túne⁽¹¹⁾ and hine lange on dæg ge-flýmde⁽¹²⁾, and þa Deniscan áhton wæl-stówe⁽¹³⁾ ge-weald. And þæs gears wurdon nigon folc-ge-feoht⁽¹⁴⁾ ge-fohten wið þone here on þám cyne-rice be súðan Temese, bútan þám þe him Ælf-red, and ealdor-men⁽¹⁵⁾, and cyninges pegnas oft ráda⁽¹⁶⁾ on-ridon þe man ná ne rímde⁽¹⁷⁾. And þæs gears

(¹) Daging (see p. 67.) *dawn*; dagian to dawn, O. daw.

(²) Aug. 29.

(³) Round, circle: hence to trundle.

(⁴) Leo IV.

(⁵) Stood sponsor to him at Confirmation; an ancient custom of the Churches; see the 3rd rubric after Confirmation, and thereon Wheatley, &c.

(⁶) Son of Æthelwulf; see p. 65.

(⁷) Feng tó "took to," as is still said.

(⁸) One month after that.

(⁹) The Danish host of plunderers was called emphatically "se here" the army; G. das heer: see p. 9.

(¹⁰) Abl. with a little band: werod II. 1.

(¹¹) Wil-tún Wilton.

(¹²) Ge-flýman = a-flýman above.

(¹³) Wæl-stów slaughter-place, battle-field; G. wahl-platz.

(¹⁴) Great battles, battles of nations.

(¹⁵) Ealdor-man (III. 2.) senator, chief; hence alderman.

(¹⁶) Rád (II. 3.) road, in-road, raid, foray; from rídan.

(¹⁷) Ríman to count, number: hence to rime; G. reimen, D. rijmen.

wæron of-slegene nigon eorlas ⁽¹⁾, and án cyning; and þý geare namon West-seaxan frið ⁽²⁾ wið þone here.

A.D. 901. Her forð-ferde Ælf-red Ædel-wulfing six nihtum ⁽³⁾ ær Ealra Hálígra Mæssan ⁽⁴⁾, se wæs cyning ofer eal Angel-cyn bútan þám dæle þe under Dena on-wealde wæs. And he heöld þæt rice óðer-healf ⁽⁵⁾ gear læs þe prytig wintra ⁽⁶⁾.

VIII.—*Apollonius.* (7)

. Translated from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a monkish collection of tales, by whom is not known. This story is the original of the play called "Pericles Prince of Tyre."

Sóð-líce mid-þý-þe þæs cynges dóhtor ge-seáh þæt Apollonius on eallum góðum cræftum swá wel wæs ge-togen ⁽⁸⁾, þá ge-feoll hyre mód on his lufe. þá æfter þæs beórscipes ⁽⁹⁾ ge-endunge, cwæð þæt

(1) Eorl earl.

(2) Namon frið *made peace*: frið (II. 2.) *peace*; G. friede.

(3) The Anglo-Saxons reckoned time by *nights*: of this our *se'n-night* (seven-night) and *fo'rt'night* (fourteen-night) are relics.

(4) *All Hallows' Mass, Feast of All Saints*: mæsse I. 3.

(5) See p. 36.

(6) See p. 35, note 5.

(7) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, pp. 17—19, 23—25.

(8) Teógan, (túgan), *teón to draw &c., educate*: comp. G. er-ziehen; L. e-ducare from ducere.

(9) Beór-scipe (II. 2.) *feast, banquet*; beór (II. 1.) *beer*.

mæden tó þám cyngre: Leófa fæder, þú lýfdest me lytle ær þæt ic móste gifan Apollonio swá-hwæt-swá ic wolde of þínum gold-horde⁽¹⁾. Arcestrates se cyng cwæð tó hyre: Gif him swá-hwæt-swá þú wile. Heó þá swíðe⁽²⁾ blíðe⁽³⁾ út-eóðe and cwæð: Láreow Apolloni, ic gife þe be mínes fæder leáfe twá hund punda⁽⁴⁾ goldes, and feower hund punda ge-wiht⁽⁵⁾ seolfres, and þone mæstan dæl⁽⁶⁾ deór-wyrðan⁽⁷⁾ reáfes, and twentig þeówa manna. And heó þá þus cwæð tó þám þeówum mannum: Berað þás þing mid eów þe ic be-hét⁽⁸⁾ Apollonio mínum láreowe, and leogað innon búre⁽⁹⁾ be-foran mínum freóndum. Þis wearda þá þus ge-dón æfter þære cwene⁽¹⁰⁾ hæse⁽¹¹⁾, and ealle þa men hyre gife heredon þe híg ge-sáwon. Þá sóð-lice ge-endode se ge-beórscipe, and þa men ealle á-rison, and grétton þone cyng and þá cwene, and bædon híg ge-sunde⁽¹²⁾ beón and hám ge-wendon. Eác-swylce⁽¹³⁾ Apollonius

(¹) Hord (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure*.

(²) Swíð (I.) *strong, powerful*; swíðe *greatly, very*; comp. L. (*valide*) *valde*, F. *fort*.

(³) Blíðe *blithe*; D. *blijde*.

(⁴) Pund (II. 1.) *pound*.

(⁵) Ge-wiht (II. 3.) *weight*; G. *ge-wicht*.

(⁶) *A very great deal*.

(⁷) *Precious*; deór *dear*; G. *theuer*, D. *duur*.

(⁸) Be-hátan (II. 2.) *to promise*; G. *ver-heissen*.

(⁹) Búr (II. 2.) *chamber, bower*.

(¹⁰) Cwen (II. 3.) *queen*; *quean* is likewise from *cwen*, which meant originally *woman*; γυνή.

(¹¹) Hæs (II. 3.) *command, be-hest*; G. *ge-heiss*.

(¹²) Ge-sund *sound, whole*; *bade them fare-well*; L. *valere eos jussurunt*.

(¹³) *So in like manner*.

cwæð: þú góða cyning and earmra ge-miltsigend, and þú cwen láre lufigend, beó ge ge-sunde. He be-
 weáh⁽¹⁾ eác tó þám þeowum mannum þe þæt mæden
 him for-gifen⁽²⁾ hæfde, and heom cwæð tó: Nimað
 þás þing mid eow þe me seó cwen for-geaf, and gán
 we sécan úre gæst-hús⁽³⁾ þæt we magon ús ge-restan.

Þá a-dred þæt mæden þæt heó hæfre eft Apollonium
 ne ge-sáwe swá hraðe swá heó wolde, and eóde þá tó
 hyre fæder and cwæð: þú góða cyning, lícað þe wel
 þæt Apollonius þe þurh ús tó-dæg ge-góðod⁽⁴⁾ is, þus
 heonon fare, and cuman yfele men and be-réafian
 hine? Se cyng cwæð: Wel þú cwæde: hát him
 findan hwar he hine mæge wurd-licost⁽⁵⁾ ge-restan.
 Þá dyde þæt mæden swá hyre be-boden wæs, and
 Apollonius on-feng þære wununge⁽⁶⁾ þe him be-téht⁽⁷⁾
 wæs, and þar-in-eóde, Gode þancigende þe him ne
 for-wyrnde cyne-lices wurdscipes and frófre.

Ac þæt mæden hæfde un-stille niht mid þære lufe
 on-æled⁽⁸⁾ þára worda and sanga þe heó ge-hýrde æt
 Apollonige⁽⁹⁾, and ná leng heó ne ge-bád þonne hit
 dæg was, ac eóde sona swá hit leóht⁽¹⁰⁾ wæs, and

(1) Be-seón (III.3.) *to look, look at.*

(2) For-gifan (II. 1.) *to give away, present, forgive.*

(3) Inn; *guest-house*; G. *gast-haus.*

(4) Ge-góðian, *to endow, enrich*; G. *be-gütern.*

(5) Wurd-lic (II.) *honourable.* (6) Dwelling, *habitation*; G. *wohnung.*

(7) Be-técan (I. 2.) *to commit, assign*; hence *betake.*

(8) On-élan (I. 2.) *to inflame.*

(9) Abl. or dat. formed A. S.-wise from Apollonius; the g inserted as
 p. 41.

(10) Light; G. *licht.*

ge-sæt be-foran hyre fæder bedde. þá cwæð se cyng: Leófe dóhtor, for-hwý eart þú þus ær-wacol⁽¹⁾? þæt mæden cwæð: Me a-wehton⁽²⁾ þa ge-cneordnessa⁽³⁾ þe ic girstan-dæg⁽⁴⁾ ge-hýrde; nú bidde ic þe for-þám þæt þú be-fæste⁽⁵⁾ me úrum cuman Apollonige tó láre⁽⁶⁾. þá weard se cyng pearle⁽⁷⁾ ge-blissod⁽⁸⁾, and hét feccan Apollonium and him tó cwæð: Mín dóhtor gyrnd þæt heó móte leornian æt þe þa ge-sæligan⁽⁹⁾ láre þe þú canst, and gif þú wilt þisum oingum ge-hýrsum beón, ic swerige þe þurh mínes .ices mæгна⁽¹⁰⁾ þæt swá-hwæt-swá þú on sá for-lure, ic þe þæt on land ge-staðelige⁽¹¹⁾. þá-þá Apollonius þæt ge-hýrde, he on-feng þám mædeune tó láre, and hyre tæhte swá wel swá he sylf ge-leornode.

* * * * *

þá wæs hyre ge-cýd þe þar ealdor⁽¹²⁾ wæs, þæt þar wære cumen sum cyngc⁽¹³⁾ mid his aðume⁽¹⁴⁾, and mid his dóhtor, mid miclum gifum. Mid-þám-þe heó

(¹) *Early-wakeful*; comp. L. *vigil*.

(²) A-weccan (I. 2.) *to awake* (act.) G. *er-wecken*: the neut. is *wacian* (I. 1.) or *wacan* (II. 3.); G. *wachen*. (³) *Studies, accomplishments*.

(⁴) *Yesterday*; G. *gestern*; comp. L. *hestern-us*.

(⁵) Be-fæstan (I. 2.) *to commit, intrust*. (⁶) *For instruction*.

(⁷) Pearl (I.) *strong*; pearle *very, greatly*; comp. *swiðe* above.

(⁸) Blissian *to rejoice*; bliss (II. 3.) *bliss, joy*.

(⁹) Ge-sælig (I.) *happy, blessed*; G. *selig*: hence *silly, O. sely*.

(¹⁰) Mægen (III. 1.) *power*.

(¹¹) Ge-staðelian *to establish, make good*, from *staðol* *station*; whence *staðol-fæst* *stead-fast, &c.*

(¹²) Here used for *chief priestess*.

(¹³) See p. 5.

(¹⁴) Aðum *son-in-law*.

þæt ge-hyrde, heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-frætwode⁽¹⁾, and mid purpran ge-scrýdde, and hyre heáfod mid golde and mid gimmon⁽²⁾ ge-glengde⁽³⁾, and mid miclum fæmnena⁽⁴⁾ heápe⁽⁵⁾ ymb-trymm-ed⁽⁶⁾, com tó-geanes þám cynges⁽⁷⁾. Heó wæs sóð-líce þearle wlitig⁽⁸⁾, and for þære⁽⁹⁾ miclan lufe þære cláennesse hí sædon ealle þæt þar nære nán Dianan⁽¹⁰⁾ swá ge-cweme⁽¹¹⁾ swá heó.

Mid-þám-þe Apollonius þæt ge-seáh, he mid his aðume, and mid his dóhtor tó hyre urnon, and feollon ealle tó hyre fótum, and wéndon þæt heó Diana wære seó gyden⁽¹²⁾ for hyre miclan beorhtnesse and wlite. Þæt háli⁽¹³⁾ ern⁽¹⁴⁾ weard þá ge-openod, and þa lác wæron in-ge-bróhte; and Apollonius on-gan þa spreca and cweda: Ic fram cild-háde wæs Apollonius ge-nemned, on Tirum ge-boren. Mid-þám-þe

(¹) Ge-frætwian to adorn; frætu (III. 1.) ornament, fret.

(²) Gim (II. 2.) gem. (³) Ge-glengan (I. 2.) to adorn.

(⁴) Fæmne damsel; L. femina.

(⁵) Heáp (II. 2.) troop, heap; G. haufe, D. hoop.

(⁶) Ymb-trymmian to surround, trymmian to strengthen, hence to trim, guard, a garment, &c.

(⁷) To meet the king; comp. G. dem könige entgegen.

(⁸) Beautiful; wlite (II. 2.) beauty.

(⁹) = þære; at p. 5, l. 1, it should have been stated that æ is sometimes changed to á, as well á to æ. (¹⁰) Dat. of Diana.

(¹¹) Pleasing, agreeable, from cwuman (cuman) to come; comp. G. be-quem convenient.

(¹²) Feminine of god; see p. 66, and comp. G. gott, gött-in.

(¹³) = hálíg, see p. 5.

(¹⁴) Ern, ærn (II. 1) house, room; see p. 71, n. 7.

ic be-com tó fullon and-gite⁽¹⁾ þá næs nán cræft þe wære fram cyngum be-gán⁽²⁾ odðe fram sædelum mannum þæt ic ne cúðe: ic a-rædde⁽³⁾ Antiochus rædels⁽⁴⁾ þæs cynges tó-þón-þæt ic his dóhtor under-fenge me tó ge-mæccan, ac he sylfa wæs mid þám fúlestan horwe⁽⁵⁾ þar-tó ge-þeód⁽⁶⁾, and me þá syrwoðe⁽⁷⁾ tó of-sleánne. Mid-þám-þe ic þæt for-fleáh⁽⁸⁾, þá weard ic on sáe for-liden⁽⁹⁾, and com tó Cyrenense⁽¹⁰⁾. þá under-fenge me Arcestrates se cyngc mid swá micelre lufe, þæt ic sæt nyhstan⁽¹¹⁾ ge-earnode⁽¹²⁾ þæt he geaf me his á-cennedan⁽¹³⁾ dóhtor tó ge-mæccan. Seó fór þá mid me tó on-fonne mínon cyne-ríce, and þás míne dóhtor þe ic be-foran þe, Diana, ge-and-weard⁽¹⁴⁾ hæbbe, a-cende on sáe, and hyre gást a-let⁽¹⁵⁾. Ic þá hí mid cyne-licum réafe ge-scrýdde, and mid golde and ge-write⁽¹⁶⁾ on ciste⁽¹⁷⁾ a-legde⁽¹⁸⁾, þæt se-þe hí funde hí wurd-lice

(¹) And-git (II. 1.) *understanding*.

(²) Be-gán *to exercise, cultivate, attend to*.

(³) A-rædan *to read, guess*; G. *er-rathen to guess*.

(⁴) II. 2. *riddle*; G. *räthsel*.

(⁵) Horu (III. 1.) *pollution*.

(⁶) Ge-þeóðan (I. 2.) *to join*.

(⁷) Syrwan *to plot*; searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(⁸) For-fleón *to escape, flee from*.

(⁹) Shipwrecked; líðan (III. 2.) *to sail, for-líðan to sail with ill success, suffer shipwreck*.

(¹⁰) Cyrene.

(¹¹) *At last*.

(¹²) Earned, deserved, obtained.

(¹³) A'-cenned = á-cenned *only begotten*.

(¹⁴) *Present*.

(¹⁵) A-lætan = of-lætan *to let forth, give up*.

(¹⁶) Ge-writ (III. 1.) *writing, writ, inscription*.

(¹⁷) Cist (II. 3.) *chest, coffin*; P. *kist*, G. *kiste*.

(¹⁸) Usually -lede; from -leggan.

be-byrigde⁽¹⁾, and þás míne dóhtor be-fæste þám mán-fullestan⁽²⁾ mannan to féðanne⁽³⁾. Fór me⁽⁴⁾ þá tó Egipta-lande feower-tyne gear on heófe⁽⁵⁾: þá ic on-gean⁽⁶⁾ com, þá sædon hí me þæt mín dóhtor wære forð-faren⁽⁷⁾; and me wæs mín sár⁽⁸⁾ eal ge-ed-níwad.

Mid-þám-þe he þás þingc eal a-reht hæfde, Arcestrate sóð-lice his wíf úp-a-rás, and hine ymb-clypte⁽⁹⁾. Þá niste ná Apollonius ne ne ge-lýfde þæt heó his ge-mæcca⁽¹⁰⁾ wære, ac sceáf⁽¹¹⁾ hí fram him. Heó þá micelre stefne clypode, and cwæð mid wópe: Ic eom Arcestrate þín ge-mæcca, Arcestrates dóhtor þæs cynges, and þú eart Apollonius mín láreow þe me lærdest! Þú eart se for-lidena man þe ic lufode, ná for gálnesse⁽¹²⁾ ac for wís-dóme! Hwar is mín dóhtor? He be-wende hine þá tó Thasian⁽¹³⁾ and cwæð: Þis heó is; and híg weópon þá ealle, and eác blis-sodon. And þæt word sprang geond eal þæt land þæt Apollonius se mæra cyngc hæfde funden his wíf; and þá weard or-mæte⁽¹⁴⁾ bliss, and þa or-

(¹) (Be-) byrgan to bury.

(²) Mán-full *wicked*; mán (II. 1.) *wickedness, sin, crime*; mán-swara a man-sworn, perjured man; G. mein-eid, false oath.

(³) To feed, nourish, bring up.

(⁴) See p. 81.

(⁵) Heáf, heóf (II. 2.) *sigh, groan, grief*.

(⁶) Again, back again.

(⁷) Forð-faran = forð-feran.

(⁸) Pain, grief, sore.

(⁹) Ymb-clyppan to embrace, clasp round.

(¹⁰) Ge-mæcca *mate* serves for both genders; thus correct n. 9, p. 111.

(¹¹) Scúfan (III. 3.) to shore, push; G. schieben, D. schuiven.

(¹²) Lust.

(¹³) The A. S. dative, like Dianan above and Antiochian below.

(¹⁴) Measureless, immense; from or- and metan to *mete, measure*; see Additions. &c.

gana⁽¹⁾ wæron ge-togene⁽²⁾, and þa býman⁽³⁾ ge-bláwene⁽⁴⁾, and þar weard blíde ge-beórscipe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cynge and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran⁽⁵⁾ þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þære mægde on Efe-sum, heó fór mid hyre were⁽⁶⁾, and mid hyre aðume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ríce ge-healden⁽⁷⁾. Fór⁽⁸⁾ þá síð-þán tó Tirum⁽⁹⁾ and ge-sette þar Athenagoras his aðum tó cynge; fór þá sóð-lice þanon tó Tharsum mid his wife, and mid his dóhtor, and mid cyne-licre fyrde⁽¹⁰⁾, and hét sona ge-læccan⁽¹¹⁾ Stranguilionem and Dionisiaden, and lædan be-foran him þar he sæt on his þrym-setle⁽¹²⁾.

(1) L. organum, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(2) Lit. *drawn*; from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows.

(3) Býme trumpet.

(4) Bláwan (II. 2.) *to blow*; G. blähen.

(5) Gyngre (*female*) *disciple, follower*, lit. *younger*; G. jünger is used in the same sense.

(6) Wer (fir) II. 2. *man, husband*; L. vir; aior was the Scythian (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(7) Had been kept for A.

(8) He, Apollonius went.

(9) Copied probably from the L. "(ad) Tyrum" (as also Tharsum below); tó seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(10) Fyrd (II. 3.) *army, array, march, &c.*; G. fährt *journey, &c.*

(11) I. 2. *to seize, catch*.

(12) Glory-seat, throne; þrym II. 2., setl III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius*. Cap. xvii.⁽¹⁾

* * King Ælfred translated Boëthius de Consolatione Philosophiæ, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

Hú þæt Mórd⁽²⁾ sæde þæt him næfre seó mægð and seó gitsung⁽³⁾ for-wel⁽⁴⁾ ne lícode⁽⁵⁾, bútan tó láðe⁽⁶⁾ he tilade⁽⁷⁾.

þá se Wís-dóm þá þis leóð⁽⁸⁾ a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swigode⁽⁹⁾ he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mórd and þus cwæð: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes⁽¹⁰⁾! hwæt⁽¹¹⁾ þú wást þæt me næfre seó gitsung and seó ge-mægð þisses eord-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne lícode, ne ic ealles for-swíðe ne gyrnde þisses eord-lícan ríces. Búton lá ic wilnode þeáh and-weorces⁽¹²⁾ tó þám weorce

(¹) From Mr. Cardale's edition, slightly altered.

(²) II. 1. neuter, while G. muth is masculine: another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9.

(³) II. 3. *desire, covetousness*; gitsian *to covet*.

(⁴) *Very well, too well*; for- is sometimes intensive; for-nean *well nigh, for-swíðe too much, excessively*. (⁵) See p. 86.

(⁶) *Unwillingly*; see p. 70: láð (1.) *hateful, loathsome*.

(⁷) Tilian (teolian) *to toil, till, &c.*: see p. 42.

(⁸) III. 1. *song, lay*; G. lied.

(⁹) Swigian *to be silent*; G. schweigen.

(¹⁰) *Reason, discretion*; sceadan (p. 54.) *to divide, discriminate, &c.*; G. scheiden.

(¹¹) Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.

(¹²) And-weorc (II. 1.) *matter, material, substance*.

þincð, bútan ic nāt be treówum, and be wyrtrum⁽¹⁾ and be swylcum ge-sceaftum⁽²⁾ swylce⁽³⁾ nāne sáw nabbað. þá smearcode⁽⁴⁾ he and cwæð: Ne þearf þú nó⁽⁵⁾ be þám⁽⁶⁾ ge-sceaftum tweógan⁽⁷⁾, þe me þe⁽⁸⁾ be þám óðrum. Hú ne miht þú ge-seon þæt ælc wyrt and ælc wudu⁽⁹⁾ wile weaxan on þám lande sélost⁽¹⁰⁾ þe him betst ge-ríst, and him ge-cynde⁽¹¹⁾ býð and ge-wune-líc⁽¹²⁾, and þær þær hit ge-fret⁽¹³⁾, þæt hit hraðost weaxan mæg, and latost wealcwigan⁽¹⁴⁾? Sumra wyrta odðe sumes wuda eard býð on dúnnum⁽¹⁵⁾, sumra on merscum⁽¹⁶⁾, sumra on mórnum⁽¹⁷⁾, sumra on cludum⁽¹⁸⁾, sumra on barum⁽¹⁹⁾ sondum⁽²⁰⁾. Nim þonne swá wudu swá

(¹) Wyrtr (II. 3.) *herb, wort.*

(²) Ge-sceaft (II. 3.) *creation, creature.*

(³) Swylce—swylc answers to L. talis—qualis.

(⁴) Smearcian to *smirk, smile.*

(⁵) Nô=ná.

(⁶) See p. 30.

(⁷) Tweógan, tweón (III. 3. See p. 60.) *to doubt, from twá; comp. δωα-ζεν, L. du-bitare, G. zwei-feln, from δωα (δvo), duo, zwei.*

(⁸) *Any more than.*

(⁹) III. 2. *wood; D. woud.*

(¹⁰) *Best: sél good, excellent.*

(¹¹) *Kind, kindly, natural: ge-cynd (II. 3.) nature, kind.*

(¹²) *Common, usual; G. ge-wöhnlich.*

(¹³) *Where it takes root, draws nourishment, lit. bites: fretan (II. 1.) (G. fressen) to eat, devour, fret.*

(¹⁴) *Fade; G. ver-welken, P. welk.*

(¹⁵) Dún (II. 3.) *down, hill, mountain; hence don in local names: G. düne, D. duin, F. dune is a sand-hill near the sea.*

(¹⁶) Mersc (II. 2.) *marsh; P. mesh.*

(¹⁷) Mór (II. 2.) *moor; D. moer.*

(¹⁸) Clud (II. 2.) *rock, chff.*

(¹⁹) Bær (II.) *bare; G. bar*

(²⁰) Sand, sond (II. 2.) *sand.*

wyrt, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þære stówe þe
 is eard and æðelo⁽¹⁾ býð on tó weaxanne, and
 ste on un-cyndre⁽²⁾ stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwd
 hit þær náuht, ac for-searað⁽³⁾; for-þám ælces landes
 ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrta and ge-lícne
 wudu tydrige⁽⁴⁾; and hit swa déð, fridað⁽⁵⁾, and
 fyrðrað⁽⁶⁾ swiðe georne⁽⁷⁾, swá longe swá heora ge-
 cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú
 for-hwý ælc sæd⁽⁸⁾ grówe innon þá eorðan, and tó
 cildum⁽⁹⁾ and tó wyrt-rumum⁽¹⁰⁾ weorðe on þære
 eorðan, búton for-þý-þe hí teohhiað⁽¹¹⁾ þæt se
 stemn⁽¹²⁾ and se helm⁽¹³⁾ móte þý fæstor and þý
 leng standan? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan, þeáh þú
 hit ge-seón ne mæge, þæt eal se dæl, se-þe þæs
 treówes on twelf monðum ge-weaxed, þæt he on-
 ginnd of þám wyrt-rumum, and swá úp-weardes
 gréwd oð þone stemn, and síð-þán and-lang þæs
 piðan⁽¹⁴⁾, and and-lang þære rinde⁽¹⁵⁾ oð þone helm,
 and síð-þán æfter⁽¹⁶⁾ þám bogum⁽¹⁷⁾, oð-þæt hit

(1) Nature. (2) Un-cynde (I.) un-kind, unnatural.

(3) For-searian to fade, become sear.

(4) Tydrían to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring, progeny.

(5) Friðian to make flourish, grow well; frið II. 2. peace, G. friede.

(6) Fyrðrian to further, forward, assist, from forð.

(7) Willingly, readily, earnestly; G. gerne.

(8) Sæd (II. 1.) seed; G. saat, D. zaad.

(9) Cild (II. 2.) shoot, sprout.

(10) Wyrtruma root.

(11) Teohhian to resolve, endeavour.

(12) Stem, trunk.

(13) Crown, head, top, helm-et.

(14) Piða pith; D. pit.

(15) Rind (II. 3.) rind, bark; G. rinde.

(16) Along; like L. secundum.

(17) Boh (II. 2.) bough.

þincð, bútan ic nāt be treówum, and be wyrtrum⁽¹⁾ and be swylcum ge-sceaftum⁽²⁾ swylce⁽³⁾ nāne sáw nabbað. Þá smearcode⁽⁴⁾ he and cwæð: Ne þear þú nó⁽⁵⁾ be þám⁽⁶⁾ ge-sceaftum tweógan⁽⁷⁾, þe me þe⁽⁸⁾ be þám óðrum. Hú ne miht þú ge-séð þæt ælc wyrtr and ælc wudu⁽⁹⁾ wile weaxan on þámlande sélost⁽¹⁰⁾ þe him betst ge-ríst, and him gecynde⁽¹¹⁾ býð and ge-wune-líc⁽¹²⁾, and þær þær hit ge-fret⁽¹³⁾, þæt hit hraðost weaxan mæg, and latost wealcwigan⁽¹⁴⁾? Sumra wyrta oððe sumes wuda eard býð on dúnum⁽¹⁵⁾, sumra on merscum⁽¹⁶⁾, sumra on mórurum⁽¹⁷⁾, sumra on cludum⁽¹⁸⁾, sumra on barum⁽¹⁹⁾ sondum⁽²⁰⁾. Nim þonne swá wudu swá

(¹) Wyrtr (II. 3.) *herb, wort*.

(²) Ge-sceaft (II. 3.) *creation, creature*.

(³) Swylce—swylc answers to L. talis—qualis.

(⁴) Smearcian to *smirk, smile*.

(⁵) Nô=nā.

(⁶) See p. 30.

(⁷) Tweógan, tweón (III. 3. See p. 60.) *to doubt, from twá; comp. δουα-ζειν, L. du-bitare, G. zwei-feln, from δουα (δvo), duo, zwei*.

(⁸) *Any more than*.

(⁹) III. 2. *wood*; D. *woud*.

(¹⁰) *Best: sél good, excellent*.

(¹¹) *Kind, kindly, natural: ge-cynd (II. 3.) nature, kind*.

(¹²) *Common, usual; G. ge-wöhnlich*.

(¹³) *Where it takes root, draws nourishment, lit. bites: fretan (II. 1.) (G. fressen) to eat, devour, fret*.

(¹⁴) *Fade; G. ver-welken, P. welk*.

(¹⁵) Dún (II. 3.) *down, hill, mountain; hence don in local names: G. düne, D. duin, F. dune is a sand-hill near the sea*.

(¹⁶) Mersc (II. 2.) *marsh; P. mesh*.

(¹⁷) Mór (II. 2.) *moor; D. moer*.

(¹⁸) Clud (II. 2.) *rock, cliff*.

(¹⁹) Bær (II.) *bare; G. bar*

(²⁰) Sand, sond (II. 2.) *sand*.

wyr̃t, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þære stówe þe his eard and æðelo⁽¹⁾ býð on tó weaxanne, and þete on un-cynde⁽²⁾ stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwð hit þær náuht, ac for-searð⁽³⁾; for-þám ælces landes ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrta and ge-licne wudu tydrige⁽⁴⁾; and hit swa dēð, fridað⁽⁵⁾, and fyrðrað⁽⁶⁾ swiðe georne⁽⁷⁾, swá longe swá heora ge-cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú for-hwý ælc sæd⁽⁸⁾ grówe innon þá eorðan, and tó ciðum⁽⁹⁾ and tó wyr̃t-rumum⁽¹⁰⁾ weorðe on þære eorðan, búton for-þý-þe hí teohhiad⁽¹¹⁾ þæt se stemn⁽¹²⁾ and se helm⁽¹³⁾ móte þý fæstor and þý leng standan? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan, þeáh þú hit ge-seón ne mæge, þæt eal se dæl, se-þe þæs treówes on twelf monðum ge-weaxed, þæt he on-ginnð of þám wyr̃t-rumum, and swá úp-weardes gréwð oð þone stemn, and síð-þán and-lang þæs piðan⁽¹⁴⁾, and and-lang þære rinde⁽¹⁵⁾ oð þone helm, and síð-þán æfter⁽¹⁶⁾ þám bogum⁽¹⁷⁾, oð-þæt hit

(¹) *Nature.*

(²) *Un-cynde (I.) un-kind, unnatural.*

(³) *For-searian to fade, become sear.*

(⁴) *Tydrian to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring, progeny.*

(⁵) *Friðian to make flourish, grow well; frið II. 2. peace, G. friede.*

(⁶) *Fyrðrian to further, forward, assist, from forð.*

(⁷) *Willingly, readily, earnestly; G. gerne.*

(⁸) *Sæd (II. 1.) seed; G. saat, D. zaad.*

(⁹) *Cið (II. 2.) shoot, sprout.*

(¹⁰) *Wyr̃t-ruma root.*

(¹¹) *Teohhian to resolve, endeavour.*

(¹²) *Stem, trunk.*

(¹³) *Crown, head, top, helm-et.*

(¹⁴) *Piða pith; D. pit.*

(¹⁵) *Rind (II. 3.) rind, bark; G. rinde.*

(¹⁶) *Along; like L. secundum.*

(¹⁷) *Boh (II. 2.) bough.*

út-a-springð⁽¹⁾ on leáfum⁽²⁾, and on blostmum⁽³⁾, and on blædum⁽⁴⁾? Hwý, ne miht þú on-gitan þæt ælc wuht cwices býð innan-weard hnescost⁽⁵⁾, and útan-weard heardost? Hwæt þú miht ge-seón há þæt treów býð útan ge-scyrped⁽⁶⁾, and be-wæfed⁽⁷⁾ mid þære rinde wið þone winter, and wið þa steare-an⁽⁸⁾ stormas, and eac wið þære sunnan hæto on sumera⁽⁹⁾. Hwá mæg þæt he ne wundrige swylcra ge-sceafta úres Sceoppendes⁽¹⁰⁾, and huru⁽¹¹⁾ þæs Sceoppendes? And þeah we his nú wundrien, hwylc úre mæg a-reccan⁽¹²⁾ medem-líce⁽¹³⁾ úres Sceoppendes willan, and an-weald, hú his ge-sceafta weaxað and eft waniad⁽¹⁴⁾ þonne þæs tíma⁽¹⁵⁾ cymð, and of heora sæde weorðað eft ge-ed-níwade⁽¹⁶⁾, swylce hí þonne wurdon tó ed-sceafta⁽¹⁷⁾?

(¹) Ut-a-springan (III. 1.) *to spring, shoot out.*

(²) Leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub.

(³) Blostm (II. 2.) *blossom*; D. bloessem.

(⁴) Blæd (II. 3.) *fruit, branch*; G. blatt, D. blad *leaf, blade.*

(⁵) Hnesc (I.) *soft, tender, nesh.*

(⁶) Ge-scyrpan (I. 2.) *to scarf, cover*; sceorp (II. 1.) *scarf.*

(⁷) Be-wæfan (I. 2.) *to clothe*; wæfels *garment.*

(⁸) Stearc (I.) *stark, strong, violent*; G. stark.

(⁹) See p. 15.

(¹⁰) Sceoppend or Scyppend (p. 5.) *Creator*; scyppan *to create*; G. schaffen, schöpfen, D. scheppen.

(¹¹) *At least, at all events.*

(¹²) *Reckon, tell up.*

(¹³) Fitly, worthily; medeme middling, moderate, meet.

(¹⁴) Wanian *to wane, from wana want.*

(¹⁵) *The season for that.*

(¹⁶) See p. 42.

(¹⁷) Ed-sceaft (II. 3.) *new creation: as if they then became newly created.*

CHAPTER IX.

VERSE EXTRACTS.

I.—*Narrative Verse.*

Anglo-Saxon Poetry is of various kinds, distinguished by rime, by alliteration, or by both; the commonest however only, termed Narrative Verse, will be here described. Its chief characteristic is *Alliteration* ⁽¹⁾, or the correspondence of the first letters of a certain number of the most important words in each line of a couplet, two called *sub-letters* riming thus together in the first line, and answering to a third called the *chief letter* in the second. The first line has often but one sub-letter and never more than two; the second never more than one chief letter. The length of the lines varies much, each however must contain at least two emphatic or root syllables, with one or more unemphatic, that is prefixes, terminations, &c.: few lines have less than four syllables, two emphatic, and two unemphatic, and some

(1) Alliteration is found in the Latin poetry of the middle ages, sometimes combined with line and final rime, and syllabic metre; it was used more or less in England along with other kinds of rime till a late period, and is still usual in the Scandinavian tongues. The Vision of Piers Ploughman (1350) is a long and regular specimen of English alliterative poetry, on the above rules. For a full account of the A. S. versification, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 136—68.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example⁽¹⁾ :

Hú lomp ⁽²⁾ eow on lāde ⁽³⁾	How befell it you on <i>your</i> voyage
leofa Beowulf, þá þú færinga feor ge-hogodeſt sæcce ⁽⁴⁾ sécean ofer ſealt wæter, hilde ⁽⁵⁾ tó Heorote ⁽⁶⁾ ?	dear Beowulf, when thou suddenly far off determinedſt warfare to ſeek over <i>the</i> ſalt water, battle at Heorot?
Ac þú Hród-gáre wið cúðne wean ⁽⁷⁾ wihte ge-bétteſt ⁽⁸⁾ , mærum þeódne ⁽⁹⁾ ?	Hast thou then Hróthgár againſt <i>his</i> known plague ought bootèd, <i>the</i> famous prince?

Here the first couplet has in the first line two sub-letters, the *l* in *lomp* and *lāde*, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in *leofa* in the second. The third line has but one sub-letter, the *f* in *færinga* which rimes with

(¹) Beowulf, ed. Kemble l. 3969—79.

(²) Limpan (III. 1.) *to happen*.

(³) Ládu (III. 3.) *líðan to travel, journey, chiefly by sea*.

(⁴) Sæc (II. 3.) hence *sack* of a town.

(⁵) Hild (II. 3.) *battle, war*.

(⁶) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Danish tribe.

(⁷) Wea *evil, misfortune*.

(⁸) Bétan *to profit, improve, do good to*; hót (II. 3.) *boot, profit*.

(⁹) Though quantity and number of syllables seem no essential part of A. S. versification, many lines will bear a more or less regular scanning; thus most short lines consist either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and spondee like the 10th: the 3rd, and 6th, also might be called imperfect adonics.

that in *feor* in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wið* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period; the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

<i>U'tan ymbe æðelne</i>	Without round <i>the</i> noble
<i>englas stódon.</i>	angels stood.
<i>Eorðan æ'ht-ge-streón,</i>	Earth's possessions,
<i>æppleda gold.</i>	appled ⁽¹⁾ gold.

In the first example the sub letters *ú* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub letters are usually double likewise; as,

<i>Frægn from-líce</i> ⁽²⁾	<i>He</i> asked prudently
<i>fruman and ende.</i>	<i>the</i> beginning and end.
<i>Sceán scír</i> ⁽³⁾ werod,	Shone <i>the</i> bright host,
<i>scyldas lixton.</i>	shields gleamed.

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

⁽¹⁾ Hence *d-appled*, as *asphodel* (O. *affadil*) has become *d-affodil*; *dappled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-grauw*: comp. F. *gris-pommelé*.

⁽²⁾ From *brave*, *pious* &c. G. *fromm*.

⁽³⁾ *Clear*, *sheer*; G. *schier*.

gana⁽¹⁾ wæron ge-togene⁽²⁾, and þa býman⁽³⁾ ge-bláwene⁽⁴⁾, and þar weard blíðe ge-beórscipe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cyng and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran⁽⁵⁾ þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þære mægðe on Efesum, heó fór mid hyre were⁽⁶⁾, and mid hyre ađume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ricce ge-healden⁽⁷⁾. Fór⁽⁸⁾ þá síð-þan tó Tirum⁽⁹⁾ and ge-sette þar Athenagoras his ađum tó cyng; fór þá sóð-lice þanon tó Tharsum mid his wife, and mid his dóhtor, and mid cyne-licre fyrde⁽¹⁰⁾, and hét sona ge-læccan⁽¹¹⁾ Strangulionem and Dionisiaden, and lædan be-foran him þar he sæt on his prym-setle⁽¹²⁾.

(1) L. organum, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(2) Lit. *drawn*; from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows.

(3) Býme trumpet.

(4) Bláwan (II. 2.) *to blow*; G. blähen.

(5) Gynge (*female*) *disciple, follower*, lit. *younger*; G. jünger is used in the same sense.

(6) Wer (fir) II. 2. *man, husband*; L. vir; aior was the Scythian (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(7) *Had been kept for A.*

(8) *He, Apollonius went.*

(9) Copied probably from the L. "(ad) Tyrum" (as also Tharsum below); tó seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(10) Fyrd (II. 3.) *army, array, march, &c.*; G. fahrt *journey, &c.*

(11) I. 2. *to seize, catch.*

(12) *Glory-seat, throne*; prym II. 2., setl III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius*. Cap. xvii.⁽¹⁾

. King Ælfred translated Boëthius de Consolatione Philosophiæ, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

Hú þæt Mód⁽²⁾ sæde þæt him næfre seó mægð and seó gitsung⁽³⁾ for-wel⁽⁴⁾ ne lícode⁽⁵⁾, bútan tó láðe⁽⁶⁾ he tilade⁽⁷⁾.

þá se Wís-dóm þá þis leóð⁽⁸⁾ a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swícode⁽⁹⁾ he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mód and þus cwæð: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes⁽¹⁰⁾! hwæt⁽¹¹⁾ þú wást þæt me næfre seó gitsung and seó ge-mægð þisses eorð-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne lícode, ne ic ealles for-swíde ne gyrnde þisses eorð-lícan ríces. Búton lá ic wilnode þeah and-weorces⁽¹²⁾ tó þám weorce

(¹) From Mr. Cardale's edition, slightly altered.

(²) II. 1. neuter, while G. muth is masculine: another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9.

(³) II. 3. *desire, covetousness*; gitsian *to covet*.

(⁴) *Very well, too well*; for- is sometimes intensive; for-nean *well nigh, for-swíðe too much, excessively*.

(⁵) See p. 86.

(⁶) *Unwillingly*; see p. 70: láð (1.) *hateful, loathsome*.

(⁷) Tilian (teolian) *to toil, till, &c.*: see p. 42.

(⁸) III. 1. *song, lay*; G. lied.

(⁹) Swígian *to be silent*; G. schweigen.

(¹⁰) *Reason, discretion*; sceadan (p. 54.) *to divide, discriminate, &c.*; G. scheiden.

(¹¹) Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.

(¹²) And-weorc (II. 1.) *matter, material, substance*.

þe me be-boden wæs tó wyrcanne; þæt wæs þæt ic un-fracod-lice⁽¹⁾ and ge-risen-lice⁽²⁾ mihte steóran⁽³⁾ and reccan⁽⁴⁾ þone an-weald þe me be-fæst wæs. Hwæt þú wást þæt nán mon ne mæg nænne cræft cýððan⁽⁵⁾, ne nænne an-weald reccan ne steóran, búton tólum⁽⁶⁾ and and-weorce: þæt býð ælces cræftes and-weorc, þæt mon þone cræft búton⁽⁷⁾ wyrcan ne mæg. Þæt býð þonne cyninges and-weorc and his tól mid tó rícsianne⁽⁸⁾, þæt he hæbbe his land ful-mannod⁽⁹⁾: he sceal hæbban ge-bed-men⁽¹⁰⁾, and fyrd-men⁽¹¹⁾, and weorc-men. Hwæt þú wást þætte bútan þissum tólum nán cyning his cræft ne mæg cýððan. Þæt is eác his and-weorc þæt he hæbban sceal tó þám tólum, þám þrym ge-ferscipum⁽¹²⁾ bi-wiste⁽¹³⁾; þæt is þonne heora bi-wist, land tó búgienne⁽¹⁴⁾, and gifta⁽¹⁵⁾, and wæpna⁽¹⁶⁾, and mete, and ealo⁽¹⁷⁾, and cláðas⁽¹⁸⁾, and ge-hwæt

(1) Fracod (I.) *vile, shameful*.

(2) Ge-risen-lic (II.) *fit, proper*; hit ge-ríst it is fit, becoming, = L. decet.

(3) Or stýran (I. 2.) *to steer, guide, govern*; G. steuern, D. sturen.

(4) I. 3 *reckon for, give an account of*.

(5) *To make known, show forth, practise*.

(6) Tól (II. 1.) *tool*.

(7) Þæt—búton *without which*.

(8) *To rule with*: rícsian, (ríxian); L. reg-ere, rex-i.

(9) Mannian *to man*.

(10) Prayer-men, clergy.

(11) Army-men, soldiers.

(12) Ge-ferscipe (II. 2.) *company*; ge-fera companion, O. fere.

(13) Bi-wist (II. 3.) *provision, food*: wist feast, &c.

(14) Búgian=búan.

(15) Gift (II. 3.) *gift*; plur. gifta usually means *marriage*.

(16) Wæpen (III. 1.) *weapon*; D. wapen.

(17) Ealo (-u) (III. 3. *ale*.

(18) Cláð (II. 2.) *cloth, garment*; G. kleid.

þæs þe þa þreo ge-ferscipas be-hófiad: ne mæg he
 bútan þissum þás tól ge-healdan, ne bútan þissum
 ælrum nán þára þinga wyrcean þe him be-boden is
 30 wyrccanne. For-þý ic wilnode and-weorces þone
 an-weald mid tó ge-reccenne, þæt míne cræftas and
 an-weald ne wurden for-gitene and for-holene⁽¹⁾; for-
 þám ælc cræft and ælc an-weald býð sona for-
 ealdod⁽²⁾ and for-swigod⁽³⁾, gif he býð bútan Wís-
 domme; for-þám-þe hwæt-swá⁽⁴⁾ þurh dysige⁽⁵⁾ ge-dón
 býð, ne mæg hit nán mon næfre tó cræfte ge-reccan.
 þæt is nú hradost tó secganne þæt ic wilnode
 weorð-ful-líce⁽⁶⁾ tó lybbanne þá-hwile-þe ic lyfode,
 and æfter mínum life þám monnum tó láfanne þe
 æfter me wæren mín ge-mynd⁽⁷⁾ on góðum weorcum.

Cap. xxxiv. 10.

* * A free translation of part of prosa ii. lib. III.

þá cwæð ic: Ne mæg ic náne cwide wuht on-gitan
 þára þe wíte⁽⁸⁾ hwæt hit⁽⁹⁾ wille oððe hwæt hit nille,
 þe un-ge-néd⁽¹⁰⁾ lyste for-weorðan. For-þám ælc
 wuht wolde beón hál and lybban þára þe me cwide

(1) For-helan (II. 2.) *to hide*; G. *ver-hehlen*.

(2) For-ealdian *to wear out, perish from old age*.

(3) For-swigian *to pass in silence*; G. *ver-schweigen*; here and above
 mark the force of for-.

(4) Usually *swá-hwæt-swá*.

(5) *Folly*; *dysig foolish, absurd*; hence *dizzy*.

(6) *Worthily, honorably*.

(7) II. 1. *memory, mind*.

(8) *Wíte singular agreeing with wuht and not with þára þe*; see p. 78.

(9) *Hit neut. while wuht is fem.*

(10) *Nédan=nýðan*.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example⁽¹⁾ :

Hú lomp ⁽²⁾ eow on	How befell it you on <i>your</i>
lāde ⁽³⁾	voyage
leófa Beó-wulf,	dear Beówulf,
þá þú færinga	when thou suddenly
feor ge-hogodest	far off determinedst
sæcce ⁽⁴⁾ sécean	warfare to seek
ofer sealt wæter,	over <i>the</i> salt water,
hilde ⁽⁵⁾ tó Heorote ⁽⁶⁾ ?	battle at Heorot?
Ac þú Hród-gære	Hast thou then Hróthgár
wið cúðne wean ⁽⁷⁾	against <i>his</i> known plague
wiht ge-béttest ⁽⁸⁾ ,	ought booted,
mærum þeódne ⁽⁹⁾ ?	<i>the</i> famous prince?

Here the first couplet has in the first line two sub-letters, the *l* in *lomp* and *lāde*, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in *leófa* in the second. The third line has but one sub-letter, the *f* in *færinga* which rimes with

(¹) Beówulf, ed. Kemble l. 3969—79.

(²) Limpan (III. 1.) *to happen*.

(³) Ládu (III. 3.) *líðan to travel, journey, chiefly by sea*.

(⁴) Sæc (II. 3.) hence *sack* of a town.

(⁵) Hild (II. 3.) *battle, war*.

(⁶) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Danish tribe.

(⁷) Wea *evil, misfortune*.

(⁸) Bétan *to profit, improve, do good to*; hót (II. 3.) *boot, profit*.

(⁹) Though quantity and number of syllables seem no essential part of A. S. versification, many lines will bear a more or less regular scanning; thus most short lines consist either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and spondee like the 10th: the 3rd, and 6th, also might be called imperfect adonics.

that in *feor* in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wid* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period; the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

<i>U'tan ymbe æðelne</i>	Without round <i>the</i> noble
<i>englas stódon.</i>	angels stood.
<i>Eorðan æ'ht-ge-streón,</i>	Earth's possessions,
<i>æppleda gold.</i>	appled ⁽¹⁾ gold.

In the first example the sub-letters *ú* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub-letters are usually double likewise; as,

<i>Frægn from-líce</i> ⁽²⁾	<i>He</i> asked prudently
<i>fruman and ende.</i>	<i>the</i> beginning and end.
<i>Sceán scír</i> ⁽³⁾ <i>werod,</i>	Shone <i>the</i> bright host,
<i>scyldas lixton.</i>	shields gleamed.

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

⁽¹⁾ Hence *d-appled*, as *asphodel* (O. *asfodil*) has become *d-affodil*; *dappled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-grauw*: comp. F. *gris-pommelé*.

⁽²⁾ From *brave*, *pious* &c. G. *fromm*.

⁽³⁾ *Clear*, *sheer*; G. *schier*.

Þá hie gielp-sceadan⁽¹⁾ Since them *those* braggart-
rebels
of-gifen hæfdon. had given up.

Síð-þán hie feóndum After they *the* foes
oð-faren hæfdon. had escaped.

Geond-folen fýre Filled through with fire
and fær-cyle⁽²⁾. and intense cold.

Wylm⁽³⁾ þurh-wódon⁽⁴⁾ They *the* flame had passed
through
swá him wiht ne sceód— so that them no whit hurt—

Big (bi), on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and some-
times do not ; as,

And begen þa beornas	And both the warriors
þe him big stódon.	who stood by him.
Big-standað me strange	Stand by me strong com-
ge-neátas ⁽⁵⁾	rades
þa ne willað me æt þám	who will not fail me at
stríðe ⁽⁶⁾ ge-swícan.	the strife.

(¹) Gilp (II. 2.) *boast* ; sceaða *enemy, robber, &c.*

(²) Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem* ; in composition it implies *suddenness, danger*, or the like ; fær-líc *dangerous* ; G. ge fahr *danger*, ge-fähr-lich *dangerous*. Cyle II. 2. ; hence *chill* ; G. kühle.

(³) Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. æstus) ; welan, weallan *to boil* ; G. wallen.

(⁴) Wadan (II. 3.) *to go* ; L. vadere.

(⁵) Ge-neát ; G. ge-noss, D. ge-noot.

(⁶) Stríð (II. 2.) G. streit, D. strijd.

falls only on the first root-letter of the word before which they stand : viz. a-, be-(bi-), ge-, to-, for-, æt, oð, of, geond, þurh ; as,

A-rædde and a-rehte *That he should read and relate*

hwæt seó rún⁽¹⁾ bude. what the rune boded.

þonne be-þófað When it behoveth
se-þe her wunað. him that here dwelleth.

pá ge-worhte he purh his	Then wrought he through
wís-dóm	his wisdom
tyn engla werod.	ten legions of angels.

To- <i>sweóp</i> hine and to-	<i>He</i> swept and dashed it
<i>swende</i>	away
þurh his <i>swíðan</i> miht.	through his strong might.

þý-læs þú for-weorðe Lest thou perish
mid þissum wær-logan (²) with these false ones.

Se-pe æt- <i>feohtan</i>	Who to fight
<i>frum-gárum</i> (3)—	with <i>the</i> patriarchs—

(1) Rún (II. 3.) *a secret, mystery, letter, hieroglyph*; here the *hand-writing on the wall*: hence to *round, whisper*; G. raunen.

(²) Wær-loga a *breaker of faith*; hence *war-lock*: wær (II. 3.) a *promise, compact*, loga a *lger*, from leógan to *lye*.

(³) Gár (II. 2.) a (missile) weapon, spear (= L. telum), chief; it forms part of many proper names, as Gár-mund, Eád-gár Edgar, &c.

Þá hie gielp-sceaðan ⁽¹⁾	Since them <i>those</i> braggart-
	rebels
of-gifen hæfdon.	had given up.

Síð-þán hie feóndum	After they <i>the</i> foes
oð-faren hæfdon.	had escaped.

Geond-folen fyre	Filled through with fire
and fær-cyle ⁽²⁾ .	and intense cold.

Wylm ⁽³⁾ þurh-wódon ⁽⁴⁾	<i>They the</i> flame had passed
	through
swá him wiht ne sceód—	so that them no whit hurt—

Big (bi), on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and sometimes do not ; as,

And begen þa beornas	And both the warriors
þe him big stódon.	who stood by him.
Big-standað me strange	Stand by me strong com-
ge-neátas ⁽⁵⁾	rades
þa ne willað me æt þám	who will not fail me at
stríðe ⁽⁶⁾ ge-swícan.	the strife.

(¹) Gilp (II. 2.) *boast* ; sceaða *enemy, robber, &c.*

(²) Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem* ; in composition it implies *suddenness, danger*, or the like ; fær-líc *dangerous* ; G. ge fahr *danger*, ge-fähr-lich *dangerous*. Cyle II. 2. ; hence *chill* ; G. kühle.

(³) Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. æstus) ; welan, weallan *to boil* ; G. wallen.

(⁴) Wadan (II. 3.) *to go* ; L. vadere.

(⁵) Ge-neát ; G. ge-noss, D. ge-noot.

(⁶) Stríð (II. 2.) G. streit, D. strijd.

<i>þæt we þær eágum</i>	What we there with <i>out</i>
<i>on-lóciad.</i>	eyes
<i>On-hycgað nú</i>	look upon.
<i>háligc mihte.</i>	Think now on
	<i>the</i> holy might.

<i>And þurh ofer-metto</i>	And through pride
<i>sóhton óðer land.</i>	<i>they</i> sought another land.
<i>Uton ofer-hycgan</i>	Let us despise
<i>helm⁽¹⁾ þone miclan.</i>	the great Supreme.

<i>Eorðan ymb-hwyrft</i>	Earth's circuit
<i>and úp-rodor⁽²⁾.</i>	and <i>the</i> upper sky.
<i>Heofon ymb-hweorfest,</i>	<i>Thou</i> compasses heaven,
<i>and þurh þine háligc</i>	and through thy holy
<i>miht—</i>	might—

And-, un-, ed-, in, tó, &c. are deemed emphatic and therefore rime; as,

<i>Him þá Adam</i>	Him then Adam
<i>and-swarode.</i>	answered.

<i>Un-lytel dæl</i>	No little part
<i>eorðan ge-sceafta.</i>	of earth's creatures.

(¹) Helm is the *top* of anything; see p. 133, n. 13.

(²) Rodor (II. 2.) *heaven, sky.*

Ne hí æd-cerres⁽¹⁾
æfre móton wénan.

Nor they for return
ever could hope.

Hæfde þá se æðeling
in-ge-þancum⁽²⁾—

Had then the noble
fervently—

Him þæt tæcen weard
þær he tó-starode⁽³⁾.

To him that a token was
where he stared.

II.—*Metres of Boëthius*⁽⁴⁾.

. The following is King Ælfred's translation of Boëthius, Lib. III. metr. I.

Se-þe wille wyrcan
wæstm-bære lond,
a-teó of þám æcere
ærest sona
fearn⁽⁵⁾, and þornas⁽⁶⁾,
and fýrsas, swá-same⁽⁷⁾
weóð⁽⁸⁾,

He that will work
fruitful land,
let him pluck off the field
first straightway
fern, and thorns,
and furzes, as also weeds,

⁽¹⁾ Cer, cyr (II. 2.) turn ; hence *char* a turn of work ; cyrran to turn, re-turn ; G. kehren.

⁽²⁾ Adverb formed from the dative plural ; see p. 70. Comp. G. ein-ge-denck *mindful, thoughtful*.

⁽³⁾ Starian ; G. starren, D. staaren.

⁽⁴⁾ Chiefly from the Rev. S. Fox's edition.

⁽⁵⁾ P. vearn, G. farn-kraut.

⁽⁶⁾ Þorn ; G. dorn.

⁽⁷⁾ Same is connected with our *same*.

⁽⁸⁾ Weóð (II. 1.) D. wíed.

þa þe willað	that will
wel hwær ⁽¹⁾ derian	everywhere hurt
clánum hwæte,	<i>the</i> clean wheat,
þý-læs he ciða-leás ⁽²⁾	lest it germ-less
licge on þæm lande.	lie on the land.
Is leóda ⁽³⁾ ge-hwæm	Is to all people
þeós óðru bysen	this other example
efn be-héfe ⁽⁴⁾ ;	even <i>as</i> needful ;
þæt is þætte þinceð ⁽⁵⁾	that is that seemeth
þegna ge-hwylcum	to every man
huniges ⁽⁶⁾ beó-breád	honey's bee-bread
healfe þý swétre,	half the sweeter,
gif he hwene ⁽⁷⁾ ær	if he a little ere
huniges teare ⁽⁸⁾ ,	<i>the</i> honey's drop,
bitres on-byrgað.	<i>something</i> bitter tasteth.
Byð eác swá-same	Is eke in like wise
monna æg-hwylc	every man
micle þý fægenra	much the gladder
lídes ⁽⁹⁾ wedres ⁽¹⁰⁾ ,	of fair weather,
gif hine lytle ær	if him a little ere
stormas ge-stondað ⁽¹¹⁾ ,	storms assail,

(¹) Wel prefixed is intensive ; wel-oft *very often*, wel-hraðe *very soon*.

(²) Cið shoot, *growth of any kind* ; hence *kid*, used either of a child or a young animal : comp. the uses of *imp*, *scion*, *sprig*, &c.

(³) Leóde *people, persons* ; G. leute, D. lieden.

(⁴) Be-hófan *to need*, *be-hove*.

(⁵) See Additions, &c.

(⁶) G. honig.

(⁷) Hwene, *hwon a little*, S. *a wheen*.

(⁸) Tear (II. 2.) *tear* ; G. zähre.

(⁹) Líðe *tender, mild, lithe* ; G. linde : observe the n dropped and the vowel lengthened, and see p. 2, and Additions, &c.

(¹⁰) Weder (II. 1.) G. wetter, D. weder.

(¹¹) Observe the force of ge- ; see p. 64.

and se stearca ⁽¹⁾ wind	and the violent wind
nordan and eástan.	from north and east.
Nánigum þúhte	To none would seem
dæg on þonce ⁽²⁾ ,	<i>the</i> day delightful,
gif seó dimme niht	if the dim night
ær ofer eldum ⁽³⁾	before over men
egesan ⁽⁴⁾ ne bróhte.	terror had not brought.
Swá þincð ána ge-hwæm	So seemeth to every one
eorð-búendra	of <i>the</i> earth-dwellers
seó sóðe ge-sæld ⁽⁵⁾	the true happiness
simle þe betere,	ever the better,
and þý wynsumre,	and the winsomer,
þe he wita má,	as he more plagues,
heardra hænda ⁽⁶⁾ ,	<i>and</i> hard afflictions,
her a-dreóged ⁽⁷⁾ .	here suffereth.
þú meaht eac micle þý éð	Thou mayst eke much the
	easier
on mód-sefan	in <i>thy</i> mind
sóðe ge-sældra	true happinesses
sweótolor ge-cnáwan,	clearlier know,
and tó heora cyððe ⁽⁸⁾	and to their country
be-cuman síð-þán,	come afterwards,
gif þú úp-a-týhst	if thou pluckest up

(1) Stearc *stark, strong* ; G. stark, D. sterk.

(2) Þonc (þanc) (II. 2.) *thank* ; G. dank : comp. L. gratiæ and gratus.

(3) Eld, yld (II. 2.) *man, human being*.

(4) Egesa = ege *awe, dread*.

(5) II. 3. from sél, sél *good*.

(6) Hændu (hýnðu) III. 3. ; heán *abject, miserable*.

(7) (A-)dreógan (III. 3.) *to suffer* ; S. dree.

(8) Cyððu (III. 3.) also *acquaintance, knowledge, hence kith*.

ærest sona,	first forthwith,
and þú a-wyrt-walast	and thou rootest
of ge-wit-locan ⁽¹⁾	out of <i>thy</i> understanding
leáse ge-sældā,	false happinesses,
swá-swá londes-ceorl ⁽²⁾	as <i>the</i> husbandman
of his æcere list ⁽³⁾	off his field gathers
yfel weód monig.	many <i>an</i> evil weed.
Síd-þán ic þe secge	Afterwards I say to thee
þæt þú sweótale meaht	that thou clearly mayst
sóðe ge-sældā	true happinesses
sona on-cnáwan ⁽⁴⁾ ,	soon recognise,
and þú æfre ne recst	and thou never wilt reck
æniges þinges	for anything
ofer þa áne,	above them alone,
gif þú hí ealles on-gitst.	if thou them quite under-
	standest.

(¹) (Ge-) wit (II. 1.) wit, loca *fold, locker, place shut or locked up.*

(²) Ceorl *man (free not noble) husband, churl*; S. carl; G. kerl.

(³) Lesan (II. 1.) *to gather, pick*; hence *lease, to glean.* G. lesen *to gather read*; comp. L. legere.

(⁴) Comp. G. er-kennen.

III.—*Cædmon* ⁽¹⁾.

* * * *Cædmon*, the Anglo-Saxon Milton, author of the Metrical Paraphrase of parts of the Holy Scriptures, from which the following extracts are taken, was first a herdsman, afterwards a monk in the Abbey of Streonshalh or Whitby, then ruled by S. Hild: he flourished in the 7th century. For an account of him from Ælfred's version of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, see Mr. Thorpe's preface to his edition of *Cædmon*, and his *Analecta Anglo-Saxonica*, pp. 54-8.

Part of Book I. Canto II.

Her ærest ge-sceóp
 éce Dryhten,
 Helm ⁽²⁾ eal-wihta,
 heofon and eorðan,
 rodor a-rærde,
 and þis rúme ⁽³⁾ land
 ge-staðelode
 strangum mihtum,
 Freá ⁽⁴⁾ æl-mihtig.
 Folde wæs þá gyt
 græse un-gréne;

Here first shaped
 the eternal Lord,
 Chief of all creatures,
 heaven and earth,
 the firmament reared,
 and this spacious land
 established
 by his strong powers,
 the Lord almighty.
 The earth was then yet
 with grass not green;

(1) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, more literally translated.

(2) See p. 133. n. 13.

(3) Rúm wide, roomy.

(4) G. frau (*noble*) woman, lady is connected with freá.

gár-secg⁽¹⁾ peahte,
 sweart⁽²⁾ sin-nihte,
 síde⁽³⁾ and wíde,
 wonne⁽⁴⁾ wegás.
 þá wæs wuldor-torht
 heofon-weardes gást
 ofer holm⁽⁵⁾ boren
 miclum spédum⁽⁶⁾ :
 Metod⁽⁷⁾ engla héht,
 lifes Brytta⁽⁸⁾,
 leóht forð-cuman
 ofer rúmne grund⁽⁹⁾.
 Raðe wæs ge-fylled
 heáh-cyninges hæð;
 him wæs hálíg leóht
 ofer wéstenne,
 swá se Wyrhta be-beád.
 þá ge-sundrode
 sigora⁽¹⁰⁾ Wuldend
 ofer lago-flóde
 leóht wið þeóstrum⁽¹¹⁾,

ocean covered,
 swart in eternal night,
 far and wide,
the dusky ways.
 Then was *the* glory-bright
 heaven's Guardian's spirit
 over *the* deep born
 with great speed :
the Creator of angels bade,
 life's Distributor,
 light come forth
 over *the* wide abyss.
 Quickly was fulfilled
the high King's behest ;
 for him was holy light
 over *the* waste,
 as the Maker commanded.
 Then sundered
the Ruler of triumphs
 over *the* water-flood
 light from darkness,

(1) An obscure mythological word ; gár (II. 2.) *weapon*, secg *man*, warrior.

(2) *Black*, swart, swarthy ; G. schwarz, D. zwart.

(3) *Sid wide*.

(4) Won, wan *wan*, dark.

(5) Holm means also an *island* in the sea ; Steep-holm, Born-holm, &c.

(6) Spéd (II. 3.) *success*, *prosperity*, *speed* ; D. speed.

(7) From metan to mete, *measure* : He who "measured the waters, and meted out heaven."

(8) Bryttian to *distribute*.

(9) II. 2. *ground*, *bottom*, *depth* ; G. grund.

(10) Sigor (II. 2.) = *sige victory*.

(11) Þeóstru = *þýstru*.

sceade ⁽¹⁾ wið sciman ⁽²⁾ ;	shade from brightness;
sceóp þá bām, naman,	created then for both,
	names,
lifes Brytta.	life's Distributor.
Leóht wæs árest	Light was first
þurh Dryhtnes word	through <i>the</i> Lord's word
dæg ge-nemned;	day named;
wlite-beorhte ge-sceaft!	beauty-bright creation!
Wel lícode	Well pleased
Fréan æt frymde ⁽³⁾	<i>the</i> Lord at <i>the</i> beginning
ford-bære ⁽⁴⁾ tíð.	<i>the</i> teeming time.

Part of Book I. Canto XVI.

þá tó Euan God	Then to Eve God
yrringa ⁽⁵⁾ apræc:	angrily spake:
Wend ⁽⁶⁾ þe from wynne ⁽⁷⁾ ;	Turn thee from joy;
þú scealt wæpned-men	thou shalt to man
wesan on ge-weake;	be in subjection;
mid weres egsan	with fear of <i>thy</i> husband
hearde ge-nearwad ⁽⁸⁾ ,	hardly straitened,
heán, þrowian ⁽⁹⁾	abject, suffer <i>for</i>
þínra dæda ge-dwild ⁽¹⁰⁾ —	thy deeds' error—

(1) For *sceadwe*; *sceadu* (-o) (II. 2.) G. *schatte*.

(2) *Scíma* light, *skimmer*.

(3) *Frymð* (II. 2.)

(4) Lit. *forth-bearing*.

(5) See p. 70—1; from *yrr* (II. 2.) *ire, anger*; L. *ira*.

(6) *Wendan* to turn, *wend, go*; G. *wenden*.

(7) *Wyn* (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. *wonne*.

(8) *Ge-nearwian*, from *nearu* to *narrow, afflict, oppress*.

(9) Hence *throe*.

(10) II. 3. *dwelian* to err.

deádes bídan ;	death abide ;
and þurh wóp ⁽¹⁾ and heáf,	and through weeping and
	moan,
on woruld cennan ⁽²⁾ ,	into <i>the</i> world bear,
þurh sár ⁽³⁾ micel,	through much pain,
sunu and dóhtor.	son and daughter.
A-beád eác Adame	Announced eke to Adam
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
lifes Leóht-fruma,	Author of life's light,
lād ærende ⁽⁴⁾ :	<i>the</i> dire errand :
þú scealt óðerne	Thou shalt <i>another</i>
éðel ⁽⁵⁾ sécean,	country seek,
wyn-leásrán wíc,	<i>a</i> joyless dwelling,
and on wræc ⁽⁶⁾ hweorf-	and into exile go,
an ⁽⁷⁾ ,	
nacod ⁽⁸⁾ , níed-wædla ⁽⁹⁾ ,	naked, <i>a</i> needy beggar,
neorxna-wanges ⁽¹⁰⁾	of Paradise's
dúgedum be-dæled :	blessings deprived :
þe is ge-dál witod ⁽¹¹⁾	to thee is <i>a</i> parting de-
	creed
líces ⁽¹²⁾ and sáwle.	of body and soul.

(1) II. 2. hence *whoop*.(2) I. 2. comp. γενεα, L. *genere* ; hence *to kindle*.(3) II. 1. *sore*.(4) III. 1. from *ar messenger*.(5) II. 2. *native country, home*.

(6) II. 3.

(7) III. 1. *to turn, return, go*.(8) G. *nackt*.

(9) Níed = neód.

(10) Neorxna-wang (II. 2.) *a word of doubtful etymology ; wang is plain, field*.(11) Witian *to decide, decree* ; hence witod-líce.(12) Líc (II. 1.) *corpse, dead body* ; G. *leich*, D. *lijk* : hence lich-gate *to a Churchyard, like-wake watching a corpse, &c.*

Hwæt! þú lād-lice
wróhte⁽¹⁾ on-stealdest;
for-þón þú winnan⁽²⁾
scealt,

and on eorðan þe
þine and-lifne⁽³⁾.
selfa ge-ræcan⁽⁴⁾,
wegan⁽⁵⁾ swátig⁽⁶⁾
hleor⁽⁷⁾,

þinne hláf etan,
penden þú her leofast,
oð-þæt þe to heortan
hearde grípeð⁽⁸⁾
adl⁽⁹⁾ un-líðe,
þe þú on æple⁽¹⁰⁾ ær

selfa for-swulge⁽¹¹⁾;
for-þón þú sweltan scealt.
Hwæt! we nú ge-hýrað

Lo! thou foully
crime didst commit;
therefore thou shalt la-
bour,

and on earth to thee
thy livelihood
thyself obtain,
wear a sweaty face,

thy bread eat,
while thou here livest,
until thee at heart
hardly gripeth
ungentle ailment,
which thou in the apple
erst

thyself swallowedst down;
therefore thou shalt die.
Lo! we now hear

(1) Wróht (II. 3.); wrégan to accuse; comp. L. crimen.

(2) Winnan (III. 1.) to battle, struggle, toil, also to win; ge-winn labour, &c.

(3) And-lifn II. 3.

(4) I. 2. lit. reach; G. reichen, D. reiken.

(5) II. 1. to wag, move, bear; hence wæg way (weight), wæg ware, wægn wagon.

(6) Swát (II. 2.) sweat; G. schweiss, D. zweet.

(7) II. 1. jaw, cheek; hence countenance, complexion, O. lere.

(8) Grípan (III. 2.) G. greifen, D. grijpen.

(9) II. 3. ail, disease.

(10) Æpl, æppel (II. 2.) G. apfel, D. appel.

(11) For-swelgan (III. 1.) to devour; G. ver-schwelgen.

hwær ús hearm-stafas ⁽¹⁾	where to us sorrow
wræde ⁽²⁾ on-wócon ⁽³⁾ ,	in wrath up-sprang
and woruld-yrmdo ⁽⁴⁾ .	and worldly misery.
Hie þá wuldres Weard	Them then glory's Keeper
wædum ⁽⁵⁾ gyrede,	with weeds provided,
Scyppend ússer,	our Creator,
hét heora sceome ⁽⁶⁾ pecc-	bade their shame hide,
an,	
Freá, frum-hrægle ;	<i>the</i> Lord, with <i>the</i> first
	garment ;
hét hie from-hweorfan	bade them depart from
neorxna-wange	Paradise
on nearore lif.	into <i>a</i> narrower life.
Him on laste ⁽⁷⁾ be-leác ⁽⁸⁾	Behind them locked up
líðra and wynna	of comforts and joys
hyht-fulne ⁽⁹⁾ hám,	<i>the</i> hopeful home,
hálíg engel,	<i>a</i> holy angel,
be Freán hæse,	by <i>his</i> Lord's behest,
fýrene ⁽¹⁰⁾ sweorde.	with fiery sword.
Ne mæg þær inwit-ful ⁽¹¹⁾	May not there guileful
énig ge-feran,	any journey,

(¹) *Hearm* (II. 2.) *grief, harm, calamity*; G. *harm*. *Stafas* (plur. of *stæf*) forms the second part of several poetical compounds; as, *ende-stafas end, ár-stafas honour, &c.*

(²) *Wræð* II. 3.

(³) *On-wacan* (II. 3.) *to awake, arise, be born*.

(⁴) III. 3. from *earn poor*.

(⁵) *Wæd* (III. 1.) *weed, garment*.

(⁶) *Sceamu* (III. 3.) G. *scham*.

(⁷) *Last* (II. 2.) *footstep*.

(⁸) *Be-lúcan* III. 3.

(⁹) *Hyht* (II. 3.) *hope*.

(¹⁰) *Fýren of fire*.

(¹¹) *Inwit* (II. 1.) *deceit, treachery*.

wom-scyldig ⁽¹⁾ mon ;	stain-guilty man ;
ac se weard hafad	but the keeper hath
miht and strengðo ⁽²⁾ ,	might and strength,
se þæt mære lif	who that exalted life
dúgedum ⁽³⁾ deóre,	to <i>the</i> good dear,
Dryhtne healdeð.	for <i>the</i> Lord holdeth.
Nó hwædre Æl-mihtig	Not however <i>the</i> Al-
	mighty
ealra wolde	of all would
Adam and Euan	Adam and Eve
árna ⁽⁴⁾ of-teón,	means deprive,
Fæder æt Frymde,	<i>the</i> Father from <i>the</i> be-
	ginning,
peáh he him from-	though he from them had
swice ⁽⁵⁾ ;	withdrawn ;
ac he him tó frófre let	but he to them for solace
	let
hwædre forð-wesan	nevertheless continue forth
hyrstedne ⁽⁶⁾ hróf ⁽⁷⁾	<i>the</i> adorned roof
hálgum tunglum ⁽⁸⁾ ,	with holy stars,
and him grund-welan ⁽⁹⁾	and them earth-riches
ginne sealde ;	ample gave ;

(¹) Wom (II. 2.) *spot, defilement.*

(²) Strengðo (-u) (III. 3.) = strengð II. 3.

(³) Dúguð (II. 3.) *virtue, benefit, nobility, chief men* ; from dugan.

(⁴) A'r (II. 3.) *honour, wealth, &c.* ; nouns of this class sometimes have a simple or weak genitive plural.

(⁵) Swican (III. 2.) *to cease, depart from.*

(⁶) Hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament.*

(⁷) II. 2. D. roef.

(⁸) Tungal (III. 1.) *heavenly body.*

(⁹) Wela *weal, wealth.*

hét þám sin-híwum ⁽¹⁾	bade the pairs
sæas and eorðan	of sea and earth
tuddor teóndra ⁽²⁾ ,	producing offspring,
teóhha ⁽³⁾ ge-hwylces	of every substance
tó woruld-nytte ⁽⁴⁾	to worldly use
wæstmas féðan ⁽⁵⁾ .	fruits bring forth.
Ge-sæton þá æfter synne	<i>They</i> occupied then after <i>their</i> sin
sorg-fulre land,	a sorrowfuller land,
eard and éðel	a dwelling and home
un-spédigran ⁽⁶⁾	more barren
fremena ⁽⁷⁾ ge-hwylcere	of every good thing
þonne se frum-stól ⁽⁸⁾ wæs	than the first seat was
þe hie æfter dæde	which they after <i>that</i> deed
of-a-drifen wurdon.	were driven from.

(1) Sin-híwa *mate, partner.*(2) Teón *to draw, pro-duce.*(3) Teóh (teóg) III. 1. *stuff, material*; G. zeug.

(4) Nyt (II. 3.) G. nutz, D. nut.

(5) Comp. L. fet-us, &c.

(6) Spédig *wealthy.*(7) Freme (I. 3.) *advantage, benefit.*(8) Stól (II. 2.) G. stuhl, D. stoel; hence *stool.*

IV.—*Beowulf*⁽¹⁾.

* * The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beowulf, King of the Weder-Geáts or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V.⁽²⁾

Stræt ⁽³⁾ was stán-fáh,	<i>The street was variegated</i>
	<i>with stones,</i>
stíg ⁽⁴⁾ wísode ⁽⁵⁾	<i>the path guided</i>
gumum æt-gædere;	<i>the men together;</i>
gúð-byrne ⁽⁶⁾ scán,	<i>the war-corslet shone,</i>
heard, hond-locen ⁽⁷⁾ ;	<i>hard, hand-locked;</i>
hring-íren ⁽⁸⁾ scír	<i>the ring-iron bright</i>
song in searwum ⁽⁹⁾ ,	<i>sang in their trappings,</i>
pá hie tó sele ⁽¹⁰⁾ furdum,	<i>when they to the hall for-</i>
	<i>ward,</i>

⁽¹⁾ From Mr. Kemble's edition; the translation has been adapted to read line by line.

⁽²⁾ Line 637—676.

⁽³⁾ II. 3. L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

⁽⁴⁾ II. 3. G. steig, hence stigan to go, mount.

⁽⁵⁾ Wísian to show, direct, governing the dative; G. weisen.

⁽⁶⁾ Gúð II. 3.; byrne (I. 3.) O. birnie.

⁽⁷⁾ Claspèd, closed by the hand.

⁽⁸⁾ Hring (II. 2.) G. ring: íren (ísen) (III. 1.) G. eisen. The corslet was of ring or chain mail.

⁽⁹⁾ Searu (III. 1.) equipment, chiefly for war.

⁽¹⁰⁾ II. 2. L. aula, G. saal, F. salle.

hét þám sin-híwum ⁽¹⁾	bade the pairs
sæs and eorðan	of sea and earth
tuddor teóndra ⁽²⁾ ,	producing offspring,
teóhha ⁽³⁾ ge-hwylces	of every substance
tó woruld-nytte ⁽⁴⁾	to worldly use
wæstmas féðan ⁽⁵⁾ .	fruits bring forth.
Ge-sæton þá æfter synne	<i>They</i> occupied then after
	<i>their</i> sin
sorg-fulre land,	a sorrowfuller land,
eard and éðel	a dwelling and home
un-spédigran ⁽⁶⁾	more barren
fremena ⁽⁷⁾ ge-hwylcere	of every good thing
þonne se frum-stól ⁽⁸⁾ wæs	than the first seat was
þe híc æfter dæde	which they after <i>that</i> deed
of-a-drifen wurdon.	were driven from.

⁽¹⁾ Sin-híwa *mate, partner.*⁽²⁾ Teón *to draw, pro-duce.*⁽³⁾ Teóh (teóg) III. 1. *stuff, material*; G. *zeug.*⁽⁴⁾ Nyt (II. 3.) G. *nutz*, D. *nut.*⁽⁵⁾ Comp. L. *fet-us*, &c.⁽⁶⁾ Spédig *wealthy.*⁽⁷⁾ Freme (I. 3.) *advantage, benefit.*⁽⁸⁾ Stól (II. 2.) G. *stuhl*, D. *stoel*; hence *stool.*

IV.—*Beowulf*⁽¹⁾.

* * The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beowulf, King of the Weder-Geáts or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V.⁽²⁾

Stræt ⁽³⁾ wæs stán-fáh,	<i>The street was variegated</i>
	<i>with stones,</i>
stíg ⁽⁴⁾ wísode ⁽⁵⁾	<i>the path guided</i>
gumum æt-gædere;	<i>the men together;</i>
gúd-byrne ⁽⁶⁾ scán,	<i>the war-corslet shone,</i>
heard, hond-locen ⁽⁷⁾ ;	<i>hard, hand-locked;</i>
hring-íren ⁽⁸⁾ scír	<i>the ring-iron bright</i>
song in searwum ⁽⁹⁾ ,	<i>sang in their trappings,</i>
pá híc tó sele ⁽¹⁰⁾ furðum,	<i>when they to the hall for-</i>
	<i>ward,</i>

(¹) From Mr. Kemble's edition; the translation has been adapted to read line by line.

(²) Line 637—676.

(³) II. 3. L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

(⁴) II. 3. G. steig, hence stígan to go, mount.

(⁵) Wísian to show, direct, governing the dative; G. weisen.

(⁶) Gúd II. 3.; byrne (I. 3.) O. birnie.

(⁷) Clapsed, closed by the hand.

(⁸) Hring (II. 2.) G. ring: íren (ísen) (III. 1.) G. eisen. The corslet was of ring or chain mail.

(⁹) Searu (III. 1.) equipment, chiefly for war.

(¹⁰) II. 2. L. aula, G. saal, F. salle.

in hyra grýre-geatwum ⁽¹⁾ ,	in their terrible harness,
gangan cwomon.	proceeded to go.
Setton sæ-méde ⁽²⁾	<i>The</i> sea-weary men set
síde scyldas,	<i>their</i> wide shields,
rondas ⁽³⁾ regn-hearde ⁽⁴⁾ ,	<i>their</i> very hard bucklers,
wid þæs recedes weal.	by the house wall.
Bugon þá tó bence,	<i>They</i> turned then to a
	bench,
byrnan hringdon,	<i>their</i> corslets laid in a
	ring,
gúð-searo gumena;	<i>the</i> war-trapping of men:
gáras stódon	<i>their</i> javelins stood
sæ-manna searo	sea-men's arms
samod æt-gædere,	all together,
æsc-holt ⁽⁵⁾ úfan græg ⁽⁶⁾ :	ash-wood above gray:
wæs se íren-þreát	the iron-crowd was
wæpnum ge-wurðad.	by <i>the</i> weapons honoured.
þá þær wlonc hæled ⁽⁷⁾	Then there a proud war-
	rrior
oret-mecgas ⁽⁸⁾	<i>the</i> sons of battle
æfter hæledum frægn:	after <i>the</i> heroes asked:
Hwanon ferigeað ge	Whence bear ye

(¹) Grýre (II. 2.) *horror*; comp. G. es grauet, O. it grows. Geatwe (ge-tawe) (I. 3.) = searu. (²) G. müde.

(³) Rand (rond) *edge* (G. rand), *shield*.

(⁴) Regen- is an intensive prefix.

(⁵) Æsc (II. 3.) G. esche; holt (II. 1.) *holt*; G. holz, D. hout.

(⁶) G. grau.

(⁷) II. 2. G. held.

(⁸) Mecg (mæg) *kins-man, son, man*, connected with mæg, and maga, and all with Mac-.

cyldas,	<i>your thick shields,</i>
syrca ⁽¹⁾ ,	<i>gray shirts,</i>
im-helmas ⁽²⁾ ,	<i>and visor-helms,</i>
eafta ⁽³⁾ heáp?	<i>your war-shafts' heap?</i>
I Hród-gáres	<i>I am Hróthgár's</i>
om-biht ⁽⁴⁾ :	<i>messenger and servant :</i>
ic el-peódiges	<i>never saw I foreign</i>
unige men	<i>thus many men</i>
licran :	<i>haughtier :</i>
is þæt ge for	<i>I ween that ye for pride,</i>
enco ⁽⁶⁾ ,	
for wræc-síðum ⁽⁷⁾	<i>not for exile</i>
hyge-þrymmum ⁽⁸⁾ ,	<i>but for magnanimity,</i>
gár sóhton.	<i>have sought Hróthgár.</i>

Part of Canto XXII.⁽⁹⁾

ilf maðelode ⁽¹⁰⁾ ,	<i>Beówulf harangued,</i>
Ecg-peówes :	<i>son of Ecgtheów :</i>
ic nú se mæra	<i>Consider now thou the</i>
	<i>famous</i>
Healf-denes,	<i>son of Healfdene,</i>

ce (I 3.) S. sark ; *gray shirts of iron chain-mail.*

ime (II. 2.) *mask, part of the helmet covering the face.*

æft (II. 2.) G. schaft.

n- (am-) bihtu *office* ; G. amt.

. 3.) *hope, expectation* : wén is there is reason to suppose.

lenco (III. 3.) from wlauc *proud.*

ræc (II. 3.) *exile, &c.* ; síð *journey.*

ge (II. 2.) *mind*, hycgan (hogian) *to think* ; þrym (II. 2.) *glory.*

ie 2945—2998.

(¹⁰) Meðel (II. 1.) *discourse, speech.*

snottra ⁽¹⁾ fengel,	prudent chief,
nú ic eom sídes fús,	now I am ready to de-
	part,
gold-wine ⁽²⁾ gumena,	patron of men,
hwæt wit geó sprácon;	what we two erst spake;
gif ic sæt þearfe	if I at thy need
þínre sceolde	should
aldre linnan,	from life cease,
þæt þú me á wære	that thou to me ever
	wouldst be
ford-ge-witenum,	departed,
on fæder stæle ⁽³⁾ .	in a father's stead.
Wæs þú mund-bora ⁽⁴⁾	Be thou a protector
mínum mago þegnum,	to my kindred thanes,
hond-ge-sellum ⁽⁵⁾ ,	my near comrades,
gif mec hild nime.	if me battle should take.
Swylce þú þa máðmas ⁽⁶⁾	Likewise do thou the
	treasures
þe þú me sealdest,	that thou gavest me,
Hróð-gár leófa,	Hróthgár dear,
Hige-láce on-send:	to Higelác send:

(¹) Snotor *prudent*; definite form, *se* being understood.

(²) Gold- implies *splendour, munificence*; wine (II. 2.) *friend* forms part of many proper names: Trum-wine, Eád-wine, Edwin, &c.

(³) Stæl (II. 2.) hence *stall*; G. *stelle*.

(⁴) Mund (II. 3.) *protection*; forming part of several proper names; as O's-mund, Sigemund (G. Siegmund) *Sigismund*, &c.: bora (from *beran*) *one who bears*; the second part of several compounds.

(⁵) Lit. *hand-comrades*; ge-sel (II. 2.) G. *ge-selle*.

(⁶) Máðsum, máðm, máðm *treasure, gift*.

þonne on þám golde	may then by the gold
on-gitan	understand
a dryhten,	<i>the</i> lord of the Geáts,
ón sunu Hredles	Hrethl's son see
e he on þæt sinc	when he at the treasure
starað,	stareth,
ic gum-cystum ⁽¹⁾	that I in <i>his</i> munificence
e funde	found <i>a</i> good
a ⁽²⁾ bryttan ;	distributor of rings ;
þonne móste.	<i>I</i> enjoyed <i>it</i> while <i>I</i>
	might.
þú Hun-ferð læt	And do thou let Hun-
	ferth
læfe ⁽³⁾ ,	<i>the</i> old bequest,
lic ⁽⁴⁾ wæg-sweord ⁽⁵⁾ ,	<i>the</i> ornamented wave-
	sword,
cúðne man,	<i>the</i> wide-known man,
d-ecg ⁽⁶⁾ habban.	<i>the</i> hard-edged have.
ne mid Hruntinge ⁽⁷⁾	I me with Hrunting
ge-wyrce,	glory will work,
mec deað nimeð.	or me death shall take.
er þám wordum	After those words

Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence, the best of a thing* ; from *ceósan*.

Beáh (II. 2.) *ring* ; F. *bague* : from *beógan*, *búgan* *to bow, bend*.
whether for the arm (*earn-beáh*), or neck (*heals-beáh*), were usual
from an A. S. or Scandinavian chief or prince to his followers.

Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, relic, heir-loom*, as swords often were.

Wræt *embossed or carved ornament*.

Wæg (II. 3.) *wave* ; G. *woge*, F. *vague* : *adorned with wavy lines* as
s still are.

⁽⁶⁾ Ecg (II. 3.) *edge* ; G. *ecke*.

⁽⁷⁾ Hrunting was the name of Beowulf's famous sword.

Weder-Geáta leód	<i>the Weder-Geáts' prince</i>
éfste mid elne ⁽¹⁾ ,	<i>hastened with boldness,</i>
ná-læs and-sware	<i>nor answer</i>
bídan wolde :	<i>would bide :</i>
brim-wylm on-feng	<i>the ocean-tide received</i>
hilde-rince ⁽²⁾ .	<i>the man of war.</i>

Part of Canto XXVII. ⁽³⁾

Cwom ⁽⁴⁾ pá tó flóde	<i>Came then to the flood</i>
fela módigra	<i>many proud</i>
hæg-stealdra ⁽⁵⁾ ,	<i>bachelors,</i>
hring-net ⁽⁶⁾ bæron,	<i>who ring-nets bore,</i>
locene leodo-syrca ⁽⁸⁾ .	<i>locked limb-shirts.</i>
Land-weard on-fand	<i>The land-guard found out</i>
eft-síð eorla,	<i>the return of the warriors,</i>
swá he ær dyde ;	<i>as he ere had done ;</i>
nó he mid hearne	<i>not with insult did he</i>
of hliðes ⁽⁸⁾ nosan ⁽⁹⁾	<i>from the cape's point</i>
gæstas ne grétte,	<i>the guests greet,</i>
ac him tó-geanes rád ;	<i>but to meet them rode ;</i>

⁽¹⁾ Ellen (II. 1.) *courage, valour.*

⁽²⁾ Rinc (II. 2.) *man, warrior.*

⁽³⁾ Line 3772—3835.

⁽⁴⁾ Fela usually governs a genitive plural, while the verb often stands in the singular.

⁽⁵⁾ Hæg-steald (II. 2.) G. hage-stolz ; the genitive plural in -ra seems to show that this word was originally a participle past ; and " hæg-steald mon " occurs.

⁽⁶⁾ Another allusion to the rings of their mail.

⁽⁷⁾ Lið, leoð (III. 1.) G. ghed, D. lid.

⁽⁸⁾ Hlið (II. 1.) *lid, covering, cliff.*

⁽⁹⁾ Nosan I. 3.

pæt wil-cuman	quoth that welcome
ra leóðum,	to <i>the</i> people of <i>the</i> Wed-
	ers,
s ⁽¹⁾ on scír-hame ⁽²⁾	men in bright mail
pe fóron.	to <i>their</i> ship went.
æs on sande	There was on <i>the</i> sand
áp naca ⁽³⁾	<i>the</i> sea-curved bark
n here-wædum,	laden with war-weeds,
ed stefna ⁽⁴⁾ ,	<i>the</i> ringed vessel,
m and máðmum ;	with horses and gifts ;
hlifade	<i>the</i> mast lifted itself
Hróð-gáres	over Hróthgár's
ge-streónum ⁽⁵⁾ :	hoarded treasures :
ém bát-wearde ⁽⁶⁾	he to the boat-ward
en golde	bound with gold
ge-sealde,	a sword gave,
ie síð-pán wæs	so that he afterwards was
eodu-bence ⁽⁷⁾	on <i>the</i> mead-bench
ia þý weordre,	for <i>the</i> gifts <i>the</i> worthier,
áfe.	<i>the</i> heir-loom.
át him on nacan	<i>He</i> departed in <i>the</i> ship

bealc, scalc *man, servant* &c. ; G. schalk *rogue*. Mearh-scalc *c. having the care of the horses (mearh horse) ; hence mar-shal.*

ham (hama) *covering, here armour.*

lomp. G. nachen, F. nacelle.

stefn (stemn) (II. 2.) *stem, prow ; stefna ship having a stem : ship stem adorned with rings.*

ford (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure ; ge-streón (II. 3.) acquisition, wealth reónan, strýnan to acquire, get, beget ; hence strain, breed.*

bát (II. 1.) G. boot.

leodo, medo (-u) (III. 2.) G. meth, D. meede.

dréfan deóp wæter;	to urge <i>the</i> deep water;
Dena land of-geaf:	the Danes' land <i>he</i> left:
þá wæs be mæste	there was by <i>the</i> mast
mere-brægla sum,	a certain sea-vest,
segl ⁽¹⁾ sále-fæst ⁽²⁾ ;	a sail fast by <i>a</i> rope;
sund-wudu ⁽³⁾ þunede ⁽⁴⁾ ;	the sea-wood thundered;
nó þær wæg-flotan ⁽⁵⁾	not there <i>the</i> wave-floater
	did
wind ofer ýðum	<i>the</i> wind over <i>the</i> billows
sídes ge-twæfde ⁽⁶⁾ ;	from <i>its</i> course hinder;
sæ-genga fór,	<i>the</i> sea-goer went,
fleát fámig-heals ⁽⁷⁾	floated <i>the</i> foamy-necked
ford ofer ýðe,	forth over <i>the</i> wave,
bunden ⁽⁸⁾ stefna	<i>the</i> bounden ship
ofer brim-streámas,	over <i>the</i> ocean-streams,
þæt hie Geáta clifu ⁽⁹⁾	so that they <i>the</i> Geats'
	cliffs
on-gitan meahton,	could make out,
cúðe næssas ⁽¹⁰⁾ .	<i>the</i> known headlands.

(¹) Segel (II. 2.) G. segel.

(²) Sál (II. 2.) string, &c. G. seil; hence sálan below to bind, make fast.

(³) From sund, comes sound (strait) G. sund.

(⁴) Þunian; comp. L. tonare; þunor (II. 2.) thunder; L. tonitru, G. donner, D. donder. Hence Þór Thor, the thunderer, (Jupiter) Tonans.

(⁵) Flota floater, ship, sailor; from fleótan (III. 3.) to float, fleet; F. flotter.

(⁶) Ge-twæfan to divide, &c.; from twá.

(⁷) Heals (II. 2.) neck; G. hals.

(⁸) With ornaments bound or wound round the prow.

(⁹) Clif (III. 1.) rock, cliff; L. clivus, G. klippe, D. klip.

(¹⁰) Næs nose, promontory; L. nasus, G. nasc: hence -ness in Dunge-ness and the like.

1) úp-ge-sprang	<i>The ship up-sprang</i>
þ-swenced ⁽²⁾ ,	<i>air-compelled,</i>
ide stód.	<i>on the land stood.</i>
þ wæs æt holme	<i>Quickly was at the sea</i>
weard ⁽³⁾ geara,	<i>the shore-guard ready,</i>
ær lange tíð	<i>who long time ere</i>
manna,	<i>the dear men's,</i>
þ farode,	<i>ready at the strand,</i>
látode :	<i>journey had watched :</i>
tó sande	<i>he tied to the sand</i>
ðme ⁽⁴⁾ scip	<i>the wide-bosomed ship</i>
þ-bendum ⁽⁵⁾ fæst,	<i>with anchor-bands fast,</i>
s hine ýð-þrym,	<i>lest it the force of the</i>
	<i>waves,</i>
wynsuman,	<i>the winsome wood,</i>
we-can ⁽⁶⁾ meahte.	<i>might damage.</i>

Deól (II. 2.) *keel, vessel* (= L. *carina*) G. *kiel*: vessels called *keels* in use on the Humber.

Lyft (II. 3.) G. *luft*, O. *lift*; *swencan to drive, urge*.

Hýð (II. 3.) *haven, &c.*; hence *-hythe* in *Queen-hythe, &c.*

Fæðm II. 2.

(⁵) *Oncer, ancor* (II. 2.) G. *anker*.

For-wrecan (II. 1.) *to banish, injure, &c.* hence *to wreck*.

APPENDIX.

1.—*Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning.*

. This list, in addition to what is stated at p. 2, will prove the great importance of attention to the quantity of A. S. vowels, if only as a mean of distinguishing words otherwise of the same aspect, but in truth differing in every respect but spelling. Other spellings, by which some of the words may be further known from each other, are given between brackets.

Ac (ah) *but*.

ác (II. 3.) *oak* ; G. eiche, D. eik.

a-gán *a-gone, a-go*.

ágan (anom.) *to own, possess, have*.

a-gen⁽¹⁾ (a-(on-)gean) *a-gain, a-against* ; G. gegen, D. te-gen.

ágen *own* ; G. and D. eigen.

an (on) *on, in* ; ðv, L. ïn, G. an, D. aan⁽²⁾.

an (ann) (*I*) *grant, from unnan*.

(¹) P. *agen* or *agin*.

(²) The Dutch sometimes, as here, has lengthened a short vowel ; on the whole however it will perhaps be found as safe a guide to the A. S. quantity as any modern language can be. In D. a double vowel or diphthong, in G. a diphthong, a vowel with h before or after it, or a double vowel, in general answers to an A. S. long vowel.

- án *one, a* ; G. ein, D. een : L. ūn-us, εἷς⁽¹⁾.
 ar (II. 2.) *messenger*.
 ár (II. 3.) *honour* ; G. ehre, D. eer.
 aras ; plur. of ar.
 a-rás *a-rose*, from a-rísan.
 ædre *instantly, forthwith*.
 édre (I. 3.) *vein* ; G. and D. ader.
 æl (II. 2.) *awl* ; G. ahl, D. els.
 æl (II. 2.) *eel* ; G. and D. aal.
 ban (ge-bann) (II. 2.) *ban, edict* ; G. bann, D. ban.
 bán (II. 1.) *bone* ; G. bein, D. bēn.
 bær (II.) *bare* ; G. bar.
 bær (I) *bare* ; G. (ge-)bar.
 báer (II. 3.) *bier* ; G. bahre, D. baar.
 ben (benn) (II. 3.) *wound*.
 bén (II. 3.) *prayer*.
 blæd (II. 2.) *fruit* ; G. blatt, D. blad (*leaf, blade*).
 blæd (II. 3.) *blast* ; G. blasen.
 brid (bridd) (II. 2.) (*young*) *bird*.
 bríd (brýd) (II. 3.) *bride* ; G. braut, D. brijd.
 bude ; 2nd pers. imperf. of beódan *to bid*.
 búde ; imperf. of búan *to cultivate*, &c. G. baute.
 cneow (III. 1.) *knee* ; G. and D. knie.
 cneów (I) *knew*.
 coc (cocc) (II. 2.) *cock*.
 cóc (II. 2.) *cook*.
 feol⁽²⁾ (feoll) (I) *fell* ; G. fiel.

(1) Here and often else, the *ν* has evidently been dropped before *σ* ; it appears in the neut. *εἷν*, and in the oblique cases *εἷος*, &c. See Additions, &c.

(2) Quantity doubtful ; if long, both words should be shifted to II. below.

feól (fýl) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.⁽¹⁾

floc (flocc) (II. 2.) *flock (of sheep &c.)*

floc (flocc) (II. 3.) *flock (of wool &c.)*; G. flocke, D. vlok.

flóc (II. 3.) *flook, (flat-fish, of an anchor.)*

for- (prefix) *for-*; G. ver-.

for *for*; G. für, D. voor.

fór (II. 3.) *going, journey.*

fór; imperf. of faran; G. fuhr, D. voer.

fore *be-fore*; G. vor, D. voor, L. pro, προ.

fóre; 2nd pers. imperf. of faran.

ful (full) (II. 1.) *cup.*

ful (full) *full*; G. voll, D. vol.

fúl *foul*; G. faul, D. vuil.

fyl (fyll) (II. 2.) *felling, slaughter.*

fyl (fyll) (II. 3.) *fill, glut*; G. fülle.

fýl (feól) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.

fyr *further.*

fýr (II. 1.) *fire*; G. feuer, D. vuur: πῦρ.

geat (III. 1.) *gate*; D. gat *hole, opening.*

geát; imperf. of geótan *to pour*; G. goss, D. groot.

geoc (II. 1.) *yoke*; G. joch, D. juk, L. jūgum, ζύγον.

geóc (II. 3.) *consolation.*

geong *young*; G. jung, D. jong.

geóng; imperf. of gán; G. gieng.

God (II. 2.) *God*; G. Gott, D. God.

gód *good*; G. gut, D. goed.

heaf (III. 1.) *ocean, deep*; G. haf-en, D. hav-en *hav-en*,
F. hav-re.

heáf (heóf) (II. 2.) *grief.*

(¹) D. v is = f.

- ham *ham* ; D. ham.
ham (hama) (II. 2.) *covering, skin*.
hám⁽¹⁾ (II. 2.) *home, dwelling* ; G. heim, D. heem.
hama (homa, ham) ; see above.
háma *grasshopper*.
hig (II. 1.) *hay* ; G. heu.
hig *hey ! oh !*
híg (hí) *they* : oí, L. ei, ii.
hof (II. 2.) *court, dwelling* ; G. and D. hof.
hóf (I) *hove* ; G. hub, D. hief.
hwæte *eager, brave*.
hwæte (II. 2.) *wheat* ; G. weizen, D. weit.
hyrde (II. 2.) *herd* ; G. hirt.
hýrde (I) *heard* ; G. hörte.
hyre (hire) *her* ; G. ihr.
hýre (heóre) *gentle, mild* ; G. (un-ge-)heuer.
is *is* ; G. ist, D. is : *ἐστὶ*, L. est.
ís (II. 1.) *ice* ; G. eis, D. ijs.
lam *lame* ; G. lahm, D. lam.
lám (II. 2.) *loam* ; G. lehm, D. leem.
leod̥ (lið̥) (III. 1.) *limb* ; G. glied, D. lid.
leóð̥ (II. 1.) *lay, song* ; G. and D. lied.
lim (III. 1.) *limb*.
lím (II. 2.) *lime, s-lime*⁽²⁾ ; G. (sch-)leim, D. (s-)lijm.
man (mann) (III. 2.) *man* ; G. mann, D. man.
mán (II. 1.) *sin, crime* ; comp. G. mein-eid, D. mijn-eed
perjury, and our *man-sworn*.

(¹) Hence *ham-let*, and *ham (hamp-)* in local names ; comp. G. Blind-heim, D. Gorinc-hem &c.

(²) See p. 105, n. 9.

- mæst (II. 2.) *mast* ; G. mast.
 mæst *most* ; G. meist, D. meest.
 men (menn) *men* ; G. männer.
 mén *necklace, &c.* L. mon-ile.
 metan (II. 1.) *to mete, measure* ; G. messen, D. meeten.
 metan (I. 2.) *to paint*.
 métan (I. 2.) *to meet* ; D. moeten.
 ne *not, O. ne* ; L. and F. ne.
 né (for ne-ge) *nor* ; L. nec, G. noch, F. ni.
 níd (II. 2.) *man, warrior*.
 níd (II. 2.) *envy, malice* ; G. neid.
 sæd *sated, hence sad* ; G. satt : comp. L. sāt-is *enough*.
 sæd (ge-sæd, -sægd) *said* ; G. ge-sagt.
 séd (II. 1.) *seed* ; G. saat, D. zaad⁽¹⁾.
 sæl (sel, sal, sele) *hall* ; G. saal, F. salle : αὐλή.
 sæl (II. 2.) *time*.
 sæl (sél) *good, excellent*.
 spræc (I) *spake* ; G. sprach, D. sprach.
 spræc (II. 3.) *speech* ; G. sprache, D. spraak.
 syn (synn) (II. 3.) *sin* ; G. sünde, D. zonde.
 sýn (seón) (II. 3.) *sight*.
 sýn (sín) *his, &c.* ; G. sein, D. zijn.
 to- (prefix) G. zer-⁽²⁾.
 tó *to* ; G. zu, D. te, toe, tot.
 tó *too* ; G. zu, D. te.
 tol (toll) (II. 1.) *toll* ; G. zoll, D. tol.
 tól (II. 1.) *tool*.
 uton *let us—* ; L. utin-am ?

⁽¹⁾ D. z often answers to A. S., E. and G. s.

⁽²⁾ G. z (= ts) answers to A. S., E., and D. t.

- úton *without*; G. aussen, D. b-uiten.
 wæg (II. 3.) *dish, wey, weight, balance*; G. wage, D.
 waag.
 wæg (II. 2.) *wave*; G. woge, F. vague.
 wende (I) *turned, went*; G. wandte, D. wende.
 wénde (I) *weened*; G. währnte, D. waaude.
 werig *spiteful*.
 wérig *weary*.
 westan *from the west*.
 wéstan (I. 2.) *to waste, ravage*; G. ver-wüsten.
 win (ge-winn) (II. 2.) *war, labour, gain*; G. ge-winn.
 win (wyn) (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. wonne.
 wín (II. 1.) *wine*; G. wein, D. wijn: οἶν-ος, L. vīn-um.
 þa *the &c.*; G. die, D. de: rā.
 þá *then, when*; G. da.
 þara (þar, þær) *there*; G. dar.
 þára (þæra) *of the &c.*; G. der.

II.—*Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning.*

- Aldor (ealdor) ⁽¹⁾ (II. 2.) *chief, prince*; hence aldor-man.
 alдор (ealdor) (II. 2.) *life*.
 ær (II. 1.) *brass*; G. eher, erz, L. æs, ær-is.
 ær *ere*; G. eher, D. eer.
 æt (II. 2.) *food, eating*.
 æt (I) *ate*; G. ass, D. at.
 æt *at*; L. ad.

⁽¹⁾ The A. S. has a tendency to insert e (y) before a: hence the frequent modern pronunciation of *kyart* for *cart* and the like.

bát (II. 1.) *boat*; G. boot.

bát (I) *bit*; G. biss, D. beet.

beáh (II. 2.) *ring*; F. bague.

beáh; imperf. of búgan *to bow, bend*; G. biege, D. boog.

beó (I. 3.) *bee*; G. biene, D. bij.

beó (I) *be*; G. bin, D. ben.

beón *bees*.

beón *to be*.

bere (II. 2.) *bere, bar-ley*.

bere (I) *bear*.

bil (II. 1.) *bill, faulchion*; G. beil, D. bijl.

bil *bill, beak*.

blác *pale, bleak*, hence *black*; G. bleich, D. bleek.

blác; imperf. of blícan *to shine, blink*; G. blinken.

bóc (III. 3.) *book*; G. buch, D. boek.

bóc; imperf. of bacan *to bake*; D. biek.

byre (II. 2.) *son, child*.

byre (II. 2.) *event, time*.

byrne (I. 3.) *corslet*, O. birnie.

birne (I) *burn* (neut.) G. brenne.

cin (cinn) (II. 1.) *chin*, G. kinn.

cin (cynn) (II. 1.) *kin, race*.

cyst (cist) (II. 3.) *chest*; P. kist, G. kiste, D. kist.

cyst (II. 3.) *choice*; D. keus.

cyst; 3rd pers. pres. of cyssan *to kiss*; G. küsst.

deór (II. 1.) *animal, deer*; G. thier, D. dier.

deór (dýr) *dear*; G. theuer, D. duur.

ealdor; see aldor above.

earm (II. 2.) *arm*; G. arm, L. arm-us.

earm *poor*; G. arm.

(II. 2.) *ache.*

eternal.

hostile; hence foe.

variegated, stained, discoloured.

(II. 2.) *stratagem.*

(II. 3.) *carriage, going; hence fare.*

en (III. 1.) *fastness; G. feste.*

en (II. 1.) *fast; G. fasten.*

(III. 1.) *vat, fat; L. vas, G. fass, D. vat.
fat; G. fett, D. vet.*

ı (fromm) *bold, pious; G. fromm.*

ı (fram) *from.*

n (II. 2.) *to fill; G. füllen, D. vullen.*

n (II. 2.) *to fell; G. fällen, D. vellen.*

ı (first) (II. 3.) *period, space of time; G. frist.*

ı (fyrrest) *first, chief; G. fürst.*

e; D. gij.

oth &c.

f, O. gif; G. ob.

ıve; G. gieb.

gyt, get, iet) *yet.*

gyt) *ye two.*

t *halt, lame.*

t (hylt, healded) *holdeth.*

ı (hrón) (II. 2.) *whale.*

ı; imperf. of hrinan *to touch.*

ı (II. 2.) *hound, dog; G. hund, D. hond.*

ı (II. 1.) *hundred &c.; D. hond.*

(hilt) (II. 1.) *hilt.*

= healt, healded; (see above) G. hält.

- hyrst⁽¹⁾ (II. 2.) *forest*.
 hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament*.
 in (inn) (II. 1.) *dwelling, inn*.
 in (on) *in*; *iv*, G. and L. *in*.
 leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. *laub*, D. *loof*.
 leáf (II. 2.) *leane*; G. *ur-laub*, D. *ver-lof*⁽²⁾.
 leán (II. 1.) *reward*; G. *lohn*, D. *loon*.
 leán (II. 3.) *to reproach, blame*.
 leás *false, loose*; G. *loos*, L. *lax-us*.
 leás; imperf. of leósan *to lose*.
 list (lyst, lust) (II. 2.) *lust, desire, pleasure*; G. *lust*.
 list (II. 3.) *craft*; G. *list*.
 lið (leod) (III. 1.) *limb*; G. *glied*, D. *lid*.
 lið *fleet, navy*.
 lið (licged) (*he*) *lieth*; G. *liegt*.
 mæg (II. 2.) *son, kin's-man*; D. *maag*.
 mæg (*I*) *may*; G. and D. *mag*.
 mægð (II. 3.) *maid*; G. *magd*, *maid*, D. *meid*.
 mægð (II. 3.) *tribe, kindred, generation*.
 mæl (II. 3.) *time &c.* G. *mahl*, D. *maal*.
 mál (III. 1.) *spot*; G. *mahl*, D. *maal*.
 mæl *picture, image*.
 mænan (I. 2.) *to mean*; G. *meinen*, D. *meenen*.
 mænan (I. 2.) *to moan*.
 mearh (mear)⁽³⁾ (II. 2.) *horse*.
 mearh (mearg) (II. 3.) *marrow*; G. *mark*, D. *merg*.

(¹) Hence *Hurst*, *Lynd-hurst* &c.; comp. G. *Delmen-horst* &c.

(²) Hence *fur-lough*; or there may have been an A. S. *for-leáf*.

(³) There are traces of the E. masc. *mare* in local names and old sayings; *night-mare* and G. *nacht-mahr* are properly masc. answering to L. *incubus*, *incubo*; G. *mähre mare*, answers to A. S. *myre*, D. *merrie*.

- mót (ge-mót) (II. 1.) *mote, meeting*.
 mót (I) *must, may*; G. muss, D. moet.
 næs (nose) (II. 2.) *nose, ness, headland*; G. nase, D. neus, L. nas-us.
 næs (ne wæs) *was not*.
 næs (nas) *not*.
 neát (II. 1.) *neat, nout, ox*.
 neát; imperf. of neótan *to use*.
 nest (II. 1.) *nest*; G. nest.
 nest (nist, nyst) (II. 3.) *food, provision*.
 ofer (ufor) (II. 2.) *shore, bank*; G. ufer, D. oeever.
 ofer *over*; ὑπερ, L. super, G. über, D. over.
 oððe *or*, O. *other*; G. oder, L. aut.
 oððe (for oð-pæt) *until*.
 rædan (I. 2.) *to read, guess*; G. er-rathen, D. raaden.
 rædan (I. 2.) *to rede, advise*; G. rathen, D. raaden.
 ríce (III. 1.) *realm, empire*; G. reich, D. rijk.
 ríce *powerful, rich*; G. reich, D. rijk.
 sæc (II. 2.) *sack*; σακκος, L. saccus, G. sack, D. zak.
 sæc (II. 3.) *war, battle*.
 sæl (II. 2.) *time, occasion*.
 sæl (sél) *good*.
 sceaft (II. 2.) *shaft, spear*; G. schäft.
 sceaft (ge-sceaft) (II. 3.) *creature, creation*.
 scír (II. 3.) *shire, division*.
 scír *bright, clear, sheer*; G. schier.
 scyld (scild) (II. 2.) *shield*; G. schild.
 scyld (II. 3.) *debt &c.*; G. schuld.
 segen (II. 2.) *sign, ensign*; L. signum.
 segen (II. 3.) *saw, saying*; G. sage.

seld (II. 1.) *seat, throne.*

seld (seldan) *seldom*; G. selten, D. zelden.

seó *sight, pupil of the eye.*

seó *she*; G. sie, D. zij: *ŋ*, L. ea.

síde (I. 3.) *side*; G. seite, D. zijde.

síde (I. 3.) *silk*; G. seide, D. zijde.

síde *widely.*

síð (II. 2.) *time, journey &c.*

síð *late.*

síð *since*, O. *sith*; G. seit.

slege (slecge) (II. 2.) *sledge (hammer).*

slege (III. 1.) *slaying.*

span (II. 3.) *span*; G. spanne, D. span.

span (*I*) *span*; G. spann.

stefn (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; G. steven, D. steeven.

stefn (stemn) (II. 3.) *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

stician *to stick, stab*; G. stechen } D. steeken.
stician *to stick, cleave*; G. stecken }

treówe⁽¹⁾ (trýwe) *true, faithful*; G. treu, D. trouw.

treówe (trýwe, treówd) (I. 3.) *truth, troth, faith*; G. treue, D. trouw.

tyn (tin) (II. 1.) *tin*; G. zinn, D. tin, L. s-tannum.

tyn (tyne)⁽²⁾ *ten*; G. zohn, D. tien.

wan (won) *dark, dusky*; hence *wan*.

(¹) Treówe (adj.) and treówe or treówð (noun) with the G. and D. synonyms, never have the modern sense of our *true*, *truth*, L. *verus*, *veritas*, G. *wahr*, *wahrheit*, D. *waar*, *waarheid*; these are in A. S. *sóð* and *sóð-fæstnis*: *sóð-fæst* (used chiefly of persons) conveys both notions, as also that of *justice, veracity*—"honest and true." It need hardly be added that anyhow *Truth* is neither in word nor in deed "that which one *truweth*."

(²) Tyne seems rarely used except absolutely; see p. 34.

- wān (wann) (*I*) *iron* ; G. ge-wann.
 weal⁽¹⁾ (wealh, wala) (II. 2.) *Gael, Celt, stranger, one not of Gothic race.*
 weal (weall) (II. 2.) *wall* ; G. wall.
 weard (II. 2.) *ward-en, guard-ian, keeper.*
 weard (II. 3.) *ward, guard, keeping.*
 wel (well, wyll) (II. 3.) *well, spring* ; G. quelle, D. wel.
 wel *well* ; G. wohl, D. wel.
 weorde (wyrde) *worth, worthy* ; G. werth, würdig.
 weorde (wurde) from weorðan ; G. werde, D. worde.
 wit (ge-witt) III. 1. *wit, sense* ; G. witz.
 wit (wyt) *we two.*
 witan (anom.) *to know* ; O. wit, wis, wot ; G. wissen, D. weeten.
 witan⁽²⁾ *to punish, blame* ; O. wite, D. wijten.
 wód *wood, mad.*
 wód imperf. of wadan *to go, wade* ; L. vadere.
 wráð (II. 3.) *wreath.*
 wráð *wroth.*
 wyllan (welan, weallan) (II. 2.) *to boil* ; G. wallen.
 wyllan (willan) *to will* ; G. wollen, L. velle.
 þanc (II. 2.) *thank* ; G. dank.
 þanc (ge-þanc) (II. 2.) *thought* ; G. ge-danke, D. gedachte.
 þe *that, which.*
 þe *or.*
 þe *than.*

(1) Hence *Wal-es*, *Corn-wall*, *Wall-oon*, *wal-nut* (P. *welsh-nut*) G. *wall-nuss* (*wälsche-nuss*) *wall-fahrt* foreign journey, pilgrimage &c. See p. 118.
 n. 3.

(2) From æt-witan, ed-witan comes *t-wit*.

þe *thee* ; Dor. *te*, L. *te*, G. *dich*.

þeah *though* ; G. *doch*.

þeah (þáh) imperf. of þeón *to thrive* ; G. *ge-dieg*.

III.—Other words likely to be confounded by learners.

Æl- for eal ; as æl-mihtig *almighty*.

æl- (el-) ; as, æl-þeodig *foreign*.

beran (II. 1.) *to bear*.

berian ⁽¹⁾ *to bare*.

birnan ⁽²⁾ (byrnan) (III. 1.) *to burn*, (neut.) G. *brennen*.

bærnan (bernan) (I. 2.) *to burn*, (act.) G. *brennen*.

búgan (beógan) (III. 3.) *to bow, bend*, (neut.) G. *biegen*,
D. *buigen*.

bígan (I. 2.) *to bow, bend*, (act.)

búgian (= búan) *to inhabit &c.*

cleófan (clúfan) (III. 3.) *to cleave, split* ; G. *klieben*, D.
klieven, klooven.

clifian *to cleave, stick* ; G. *kleben*, D. *kleeven*.

cunnan (anom.) *to know, be able*.

cunnian *to try, tempt, attempt*.

⁽¹⁾ The conjugation of verbs in -ian is not marked here or in the later notes above, as they can only be I. 1.

⁽²⁾ Here and in the other instances below the neuter verb is complex, conj. II. or III., while the active is simple, conj. I., usually I. 2. ; the latter is commonly formed from the imperf. of the former ; as, *birne, barn* ; *bærnan*, and the like : the E., G., and D. synonyms on the whole answer closely to the A. S. *Fall* for *fell*, *lay* for *lie*, *set* for *sit* are as wrong as *drink* for *drench*, or *drench* for *drink* would be. Comp. L. *pendēre to hang*, (neut.) *pendere to hang* (act.) &c.

cwelan (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.

cwellan (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. quälen *to vex &c.*

denn (II. 1.) *den*.

denu (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.

drincan (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. trinken, D. trinken.

drencan (I. 2.) *to drench, drown (act.)*; G. trän'ken, D. drenken.

a-drincan (III. 1.) *to drown (neut.)*; G. er-trinken, D. ver-trinken.

faran (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. fahren, D. vaaren.
feran (I. 2.) }

ferian *to convey, carry, also go*; G. führen, D. voeren.

feallan (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. fallen, D. vallen.

fyllan (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.

fleógan (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.

fligan (a-fligan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.

fúlian *to rot, grow foul*; G. ver-faulen.

fullian *to baptise*.

grætan (greótan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. krijten.

grétan (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. grüssen, D. groeten.

hangian *to hang (neut.)*; G. hangen.

hangan (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang (act.)*; G. hängen.

hátan (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. heissen, D. heeten.

hatian *to hate*; G. hassen, D. haaten.

hæbban (habban) *to have*; G. haben, D. hebben.

hebban (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. heben, D. heffen.

heort (heorot) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. hirsch, D. hert.

heorte (I. 3.) *heart*; G. herz, D. hart.

hlæst (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.

hlæst (II. 1.) *lust, load*; G. last.

hnígan (III. 2.) *to stoop*; D. nijgen, G. neigen (act.)

hnægan (I. 2.) *to make stoop*.

hrím *rime, frost*.

rím (II. 2.) *rime, number*; G. reim, D. rijm.

hýran (I. 2.) *to hear*; G. hören, D. hooren.

hýrian *to hire*; G. heuern, D. huuren.

herian *to praise*.

hergian *to harry, ravage*; G. ver-heeren.

inc *you two*.

inca ⁽¹⁾ *ill-will*

irnan (yrnan) (III. 1.) *to run*; G. rinnen, D. rennen.

ærnan (ernan) (I. 2.) *to let run*.

læg (II. 3.) *law*; L. lex, lēg-is.

lagu (III. 3) *water*; comp. L. lăc-us, G. lache *lake* &c.

leán (II. 2.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

læn (II. 1.) *loan*; G. lehen.

leom (lim) (III. 1.) *limb*.

leóma *light*; L. lūm-en.

leósan (III. 3.) *to lose*; G. ver-lieren, D. ver-liezen.

losian *to be lost, escape from, perish*.

lýsan (a-lýsan) (I. 2.) *to loose, re-lease, re-deem*; G. er-lösen.

leȝan (lettan) (I. 2.) *to let, hinder*.

lætian (II. 2.) *to let, leave*; G. lassen, D. laten.

liccian *to lick*; λειχεν, L. lingere, G. lecken, D. lecken.

lician *to please, like*.

licgan (II. 1.) *to lie*; G. liegen, D. liggen.

lecgan (I. 3.) *to lay*; G. legen, D. leggen.

(1) The declension of nouns in -a here, and in the later notes to the Extracts, is not marked, as they can be only I. 1.

- be-lífan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.
 læfan (I. 2.) *to leave, make remain*.
 a-lýfan (lýfan) (I. 2.) *to al-low*; G. er-lauben, F. al-louer.
 ge-lýfan (I. 2.) *to be-lieve*; G. g-lauben, D. ge-looven.
 líðan (III. 2.) *to go, voyage*.
 læðan (I. 2.) *to lead, make go*; G. leiten, D. leiden.
 locc (II. 2.) *lock (of hair &c.)*; D. lok.
 loca *locker, fold, place locked or shut up*.
 locu (III. 2.) *lock, fastening*; also *locker &c.*
 lutian *to lurk*; L. lăt-ere.
 lútan (leótan) (III. 3.) *to lout, bow*.
 mæd (II. 1.) *math, mead*; G. mahd, matte.
 méð (II. 3.) *need, reward*.
 medo (-u, meodo) (III. 2.) *mead*; G. meth, D. meede.
 mæg (mæcg, mecg) (II. 2. plur. magas) *son, kin's-man*.
 mæg (II. 2. plur. mægás) } *kin's-man*; D. maag.
 maga (plur. magan) }
 mæge (I. 3.) *kin's-woman*.
 metan } See I. above.
 métan }
 mætan (I. 2.) *to paint*.
 múð (II. 2.) *mouth (of an animal)*; G. mund, D. mond.
 múða *mouth (of a river)*; G. münd-ung.
 a-rísan (III. 2.) *to a-rise*; D. rijzen.
 a-réran (I. 2.) *to rear*.
 sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. sähen, D. zaaijen.
 seówian (sýwian) *to sew*.

- sincan (III. 1.) *to sink* (neut.); G. sinken, D. zinken.
 sencan (I. 2.) *to sink* (act.); G. senken, D. zenken.
 sittan (II. 1.) *to sit*; G. sitzen, D. zitten.
 settan (I. 2.) *to set*; G. setzen, D. zetten.
 sígan (III. 2.) *to sink, fall down*.
 ségan (I. 2.) *to throw down, subdue*.
 springan (III. 1.) *to spring, burst* (neut.); G. springen.
 sprengan (I. 2.) *to spring, burst* (act.); G. sprengen. (¹)
 swefan (II. 1.) *to sleep*.
 swebban *to put to sleep*.
 swefnian *to dream*.
 swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.
 swencan (I. 2.) *to make labour, oppress*.
 swindan (III. 1.) *to vanish*; G. schwinden.
 swendan (I. 2.) *to make vanish, dissipate*; G. verschwenden.
 treów (III. 1.) *tree*.
 treówe (trýwe) *true, truth*; see II. above.
 wacan (II. 3.) (wacian) *to wake, watch* (neut.); G. wachen, D. waaken.
 weccan (I. 2.) *to wake* (act.); G. wecken, D. wekken.
 weder (II. 1.) *weather*; G. wetter, D. weder.
 wedder (II. 2.) *wather*; G. widder.
 wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling*; οἰκ-ος: see p. 103, n. 12.
 wigc (II. 1.) *horse*.
 wíg (II. 2.) *war*.
 windan (III. 1.) *to wind, turn* (neut.); G. and D. winden.
 wendan (I. 3.) *to turn* (act.), *wend, go*; G. and D. wenden.

(¹) *To spring (a mine), blow up or open.*

wīse (I. 3.) *wise, manner* ; G. *weise*, D. *wijze*.

wīsa *wise man, guide* ; G. *weiser*, D. *wijzer*.

wītan (anom.) *to know &c.* : see I. above.

ge-wītan *to depart*.

witian *to decide*.

wīte (III. 1.) *punishment* ; O. *wite*.

wīta *counsellor* ; hence *witena-ge-mót parliament*.

wræð *wrath, anger*.

wrād *wroth, angry*.

pīncan (I. 3.) *to seem* ; G. *dünken*, D. *dunken*.

pencan (I. 3.) *to think, make seem to one-self* ; G. and D. *denken*. (¹)

(¹) Comp. *δοκεω I think, seem, δοκει μοι me-thinks*.

IV.—*Additional Notes.*

Page 1.—Æ is not a diphthong, but a modification of a in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by e; thus dæg, dæge, but plur. dagas, dagum; so also fæt, sæd, &c. : é answering to Goth. é, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote i without a dot, y with one.

Þ probably gave rise to the O. abbreviations ye for *the* (þe), yt for *that* (þt), &c.

Page 2.—þ was also written for oððe or, sóðþ for sóð—i.e. *truly, verily*. Examples of the use of ñ are þā for þām *to the* &c., þon for þonne *then, when*.

In later times ȝ occurs for g, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards = y: hence the O. z still retained in some S. names, as Dalsell, Menzies, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, wiid, good, gees, for wíd, gód, gés, like D. wijd &c.; in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects; as, (sleahan) sleán, G. schlagen, D. slaan; gangan, gán, G. gehen, D. gaan; hangan, hón, G. and D. hangen. N has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before s, (Note 1.) while it remains in kindred tongues; as, ést (*love, favour*), Goth. ansts; gós, G. gans, L. ans-er; ós (*god, hero*) G. ans; sóft, G. sanft; fús (*prompt*), Goth. funs; ús, Goth. and G. uns, L. nos, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where ns is in like manner avoided; as, δους, δούσα (L. dans), στας, σῶσα (L. stans), Σιμοεις, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the ν appears as soon as the σ is removed: neut. δον, σταν; gen. δοντος, σταντος, Σιμοεντος &c. In A. S. í, ý, ó, and ú before ð,

answer to a cognate short vowel followed by nd, nt, or nth, in the other languages; as, líðe, (*lithe, soft*) G. līnde; sīð (*time*) Goth. sinths, Dan. sinde; swīð, Goth. swinths; hrýðer, G. rind. D. rund; ýð, L. unda; óðer, Goth. anthers, G. ander; teóðe (*tenth*), G. zehnte; eúð, G. kund; gúð (*war*), Goth. gunths, O. G. kund.

In the imperfects stód, bróhte, þáhte, þóhte, n is likewise dropt, and the vowel made long, g or c in the three last becoming h, as often else; eunnan and unnah also make cúðe, úðe instead of cunde (G. konnte), unde: bohte *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L.; as, fundó, fúdi, fúsus; tundo, túsus, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

Page 4.—Sometimes too g is added before e, as geów for eów, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41); with a soft vowel before or after it, g seems to have been but lightly sounded, as y, or as a fine guttural.

Page 5.—Other changes are io for eo, and íó for eó; seofon, siofon, heó, hío: u for o, and ú for ó, especially after ge, which sometimes becomes i; geong, (giung) iung; geó, (giú) iú, íó; Iótas, Iútas *Jutes*: le for y, gyld, gield *payment, tax* &c. U occurs mediævally for v in foreign names, as Dauid *David*; hence also for f, as lufian for lufian *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

Page 8.—A. S. d has sometimes become E. th (soft), often G. t; fæder *father*; G. vater. p and ð usually answer to G. and D. d; þreo, G. drei, D. drie; bróðer, G. bruder, D. broeder; ð sometimes to G. and D. t; forð, G. fort, D. voort. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination th for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as þ is found oftenest at the beginning, and ð at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German:

Neut. <i>clif</i>	G. <i>klippe</i> (f.)	<i>cliff, rock.</i>
— <i>líc</i>	G. <i>leiche</i> (f.)	<i>corpe.</i>
— <i>séd</i>	G. <i>saat</i> (f.)	<i>seed.</i>
— <i>sceorp</i>	G. <i>schärpe</i> (f.)	<i>scarf.</i>
— <i>big-spel</i>	G. <i>bei-spiel</i> (m.)	<i>example.</i>
— <i>toll</i>	G. <i>zoll</i> (m.)	<i>toll.</i>
Masc. <i>næs</i>	G. <i>nase</i> (f.)	<i>nose, nos.</i>
— <i>sál</i>	G. <i>seil</i> (n.)	<i>cord.</i>
— <i>tear</i>	G. <i>zähre</i> (f.)	<i>tear.</i>
— <i>an-(ge-)weald</i>	G. <i>ge-walt</i> (f.)	<i>power.</i>
Fem. <i>blæd</i>	G. <i>blatt</i> (n.)	<i>fruit, leaf.</i>
— <i>nyt</i>	G. <i>nutz</i> (m.)	<i>use.</i>

L. has *clivus* masc. and *clivum* neut.; *nasus* is masc.

Page 9.—*Swefen dream* is fem. II. 3., and neut. III. 1.

Sceó shoe (G. *schuh* masc.) is masc. II. 2. (plur. *sceós*), or fem. I. 3. (plur. *sceón* O. *shoon*), or III. 3. (plur. (ge-)scý.)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as -e, -u, -el, -en, -er, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more: *setl seat*, and *wered host* are masc.; -oð and -uð are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem.; as, *geógoð(uð) youth*, from *geong*: -ð after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, *strengð* from *strang*; otherwise sometimes neut. as, *morð murder*, or masc. as *monð* (*monað*) *month*.

Compounds in -lác are neut., in -ræden feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more

se-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in *-σι*, and the L. in *-bus*, the latter to the Gr. which form it in *-οις* or *-αις*, and the L. in *-is*. The forms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater *seeming* propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only *-n*, and the latter they have oftener the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon; thus, simple: *ὄψ*, *aur-is*, *eár-e*; *ὀνομα*, *nom-en*, *am-a*; *ὁμο*, *gum-a*; complex: *ἑρμηνεύω*, *weorc*; *πυρρς*, *burn*; *αἰ*, *weg*; *vir*, *wer*. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning; as, *heofon*, *heofone heaven*, *mann*, *manna man*, *πῆῶν*, *eówa slave*; some with; as, *μήσ* *month (animate)*, *μούσα* *mouth inanimate*), see List III. above; *lufu* and *lufe* are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for *love*, *affection* (*amor*), the latter for *love, sake* (*gratia*): *Godes lufu love of God*; for *sumes*; *Godes lufan for the sake of some good*.

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. it is derived from it; the ablative next as in some words derived from the accus.; and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, as being in neuters and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c.: in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, *twá*, *bá*, and *þreo* are noticeable exceptions.

Page 13.—The plural ending *-an* (G. *-en*) became in time *-en* which in *ox-en* (*ox-an*) is yet rightly used; *hos-en* (*hós-a*), and P. *hous-en* (*hús*), and *furz-en* (*fyr-as*) are wrong. To *brethr-en* (*bróðr-u*),

and *childr-en* (cildr-u) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *child-er* still in P. use: see p. 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. *küch-en*) whence *chick* is shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *vie-en*; see p. 66.

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined; as *Gota Goth*, *Beda*, *Anna*: *Europa* follows the L. making accus. *Europam*; dat. and gen. *Europe* (the medieval form of *Europa*); *Donua Danube* (G. *Donau*; well called by Milton *Donau*), and sometimes *Sicilia* and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a; all nouns in -a being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in -u, (II. 3. or III. 3.); as, *Mæð-hild*, *Eád-gifu*, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgiva*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative; as, *He ge-seáh Simonem he saw Simon*. *Fram Decapoli from Decapolis*. *Iacobus Zebedei James (son) of Zebede*. *Lazarus gá út! Lazarus come forth!* Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II. 2., as, *Salomon*, *Salomones*, *Salomone*; *Petrus*, *Petre*, and the like.

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as *herz-ens*, *nam-ens*, *will-ens*, *lieb-ens* (-würdig), are derived from the Goth. gen., *hairt-ins*, *nam-ins* (L. nom.-inis) *wilj-ins* &c. A. S. *heort-an*, *nam-an*, *will-an*, *luf-an*. *Glaub-ens* is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in -en, *glauben*, (complex) Goth. *ga-láubeins*, A. S. (simple) *ge-leáfa*. *Herz-e* (Goth. *hairto*, A. S. *heorte*) is still in P. and poetical use: other G. simple nouns, as *heri* (A. S. *hearra*) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as *auf erden* (*on earth*), *vor freuden* (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in -n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed.

Page 15.—Nouns in -e (II. 2.) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, *end-eas*, *end-eum* &c.

Freónd and *feónd* being originally participials, derived, the former from *freógan* (G. *freien*) *to court*, *honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to *fáh hostile* (whence *foe*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II. 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that æ is changed to e; otherwise not; as, wæstm, pl. wæstmas (*fruit*) æcer, pl. æcceras, æcras: thus too in adjectives; smæl, þæt smale, smælor, but fæst, þæt fæste, fæstor and the like.

Feld and ford originally belonged to III. 2; feld-u, ford-u like sun-u

Page 17.—Hand belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in -u hand-u.

Page 20.—Wædla *poor* hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (I. 2.) a *beggar*; wædlian to *beg*: þearfa *poor* is commonly if not always used as a noun—a *poor man*: wana *wanting* seems indeclinable.

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings -or, -ost (-oste), and -er, -est (-este) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former oftener follow a, o, and u, the latter e, i, or y. see addit. note on p. 42

Page 25.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in -e and -lice (p. 70.) as lang-e, lang-lice, strang-e, strang-lice, hræd-lice, heæg-e, heæg-lice, eáð-e, eáðe-lice, sceort-lice, eóft-e, yfel-e, lytl-e.

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *wors-er* for *worse* is. *Lest* is (þý-)læs(-þe), t being added as in *against* &c. The ending -mest has no connexion with mæst *most*, though it also has become -most: our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative.

Page 27.—*Ye* is therefore the true nom., *you* the accus. &c. "If any man say ought to *you*, *ye* shall say."

Page 29.—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

IV.—*Additional Notes.*

Page 1.—Æ is not a diphthong, but a modification of a in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by e; thus dæg, dæge, but plur. dagas, dagum; so also fæt, sæd, &c. : æ answering to Goth. é, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote i without a dot, y with one.

þ probably gave rise to the O. abbreviations ye for *the* (þþ), yt for *that* (þt), &c.

Page 2.—ȝ was also written for oððþ or, sôðȝ for sôð-líce *truly, verily*. Examples of the use of ñ are þā for þām *to the* &c., þon for þonne *then, when*.

In later times ȝ occurs for g, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards = y: hence the O. z still retained in some S. names, as Dalzell, Menzies, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, wīld, good, gees, for wīd, gód, gés, like D. wijd &c.; in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects; as, (sleahan) sleán, G. schlagen, D. slaan; gangan, gán, G. gehen, D. gaan; hangan, hón, G. and D. hangen. N has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before s, (Note 1.) while it remains in kindred tongues; as, ést (*love, favour*), Goth. anats; gós, G. gans, L. ans-er; ós (*god, hero*) G. ans; sóft, G. sanft; fús (*prompt*), Goth. funs; ús, Goth. and G. uns, L. nos, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where ns is in like manner avoided; as, δονς, δούσα (L. dans), στας, στᾶσα (L. stans), Σμους, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the ν appears as soon as the σ is removed: neut. δον, σταν; gen. δοντος, σταντος, Σμουντος &c. In A. S. í, ý, ó, and ú before ð,

often answer to a cognate short vowel followed by *nd*, *nt*, or *nth*, in the other languages; as, *líðe*, (*liðe*, *soft*) G. *linde*; *síð* (*time*) Goth. *sinthe*, Dan. *sinde*; *swið*, Goth. *swinthe*; *hrýðer*, G. *rind*. D. *rund*; *yð*, L. *unda*; *óðer*, Goth. *anthars*, G. *ander*; *teóðe* (*tenth*), G. *zehnte*; *eúð*, G. *kund*; *gúð* (*war*), Goth. *gunths*, O. G. *kund*.

In the imperfects *stóð*, *bróhte*, *búhte*, *þóhte*, *n* is likewise dropt, and the vowel made long, *g* or *c* in the three last becoming *h*, as often else; *eunnan* and *unnañ* also make *cúðe*, *úðe* instead of *cunde* (G. *konnte*), *unde*: *bohte* *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L.; as, *fundo*, *fúdi*, *fūsus*; *tundo*, *tūsus*, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

Page 4.—Sometimes too *g* is added before *e*, as *geów* for *eów*, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41); with a soft vowel before or after it, *g* seems to have been but lightly sounded, as *y*, or as a fine guttural.

Page 5.—Other changes are *io* for *eo*, and *ió* for *eó*; *seofon*, *siofon*, *heó*, *hió* · *u* for *o*, and *ú* for *ó*, especially after *ge*, which sometimes becomes *i*; *geong*, (*giung*) *iung*; *geó*, (*giú*) *iú*, *ió*; *Iótas*, *Iútas* *Jutes*: *ie* for *y*, *gyld*, *giel* *payment*, *tax* &c. U occurs mediævally for *v* in foreign names, as *Dauid* *David*; hence also for *f*, as *luuian* for *lufian* *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

Page 8.—A. S. *d* has sometimes become E. *th* (*soft*), often G. *t*; *fæder* *father*; G. *vater*. *p* and *ð* usually answer to G. and D. *d*; *þreo*, G. *drei*, D. *drie*; *bróðer*, G. *bruder*, D. *broeder*; *ð* sometimes to G. and D. *t*; *forð*, G. *fort*, D. *voort*. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination *th* for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as þ is found oftenest at the beginning, and ð at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German :

Neut. clif	G. klippe (f.)	<i>cliff, rock.</i>
— lifc	G. leiche (f.)	<i>corpse.</i>
— sæd	G. saet (f.)	<i>seed.</i>
— sceorp	G. schärpe (f.)	<i>scarf.</i>
— big-spel	G. bei-spiel (m.)	<i>example.</i>
— toll	G. zoll (m.)	<i>toll.</i>
Masc. næs	G. nase (f.)	<i>nose, ness.</i>
— sál	G. sell (n.)	<i>cord.</i>
— tear	G. zähre (f.)	<i>tear.</i>
— an-(ge-)weald	G. ge-walt (f.)	<i>power.</i>
Fem. blæd	G. blatt (n.)	<i>fruit, leaf.</i>
— nyt	G. nutz (m.)	<i>use.</i>

L. has *clivus* masc. and *clivum* neut. ; *nasus* is masc.

Page 9.—*Swefen dream* is fem. II. 3., and neut. III. 1.

Sceó shoe (G. *schuh* masc.) is masc. II. 2. (plur. *sceós*), or fem. I. 3. (plur. *sceón* O. *shoon*), or III. 3. (plur. (ge-)scý.)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as -e, -u, -el, -en, -er, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more : *setl seat*, and *wered host* are masc. ; -oð and -uð are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem. ; as, *geógoð* (-uð) *youth*, from *geong* : -ð after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, *strengð* from *strang* ; otherwise sometimes neut. as, *morð murder*, or masc. as *monð* (*monað*) *month*.

Compounds in -lác are neut., in -ræden feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders ; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more

case-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer to the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in *-αι*, and the L. in *-bus*, the latter to the Gr. which form it in *-οις* or *-αις*, and the L. in *-is*. The terms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater *seeming* propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only *-n*, and in the latter they have oftener the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon; thus, simple: *ὄψις*, *aur-is*, *εἰρ-ε*; *δ-νομ-α*, *non-en*, *nam-a*; *hom-o*, *gum-a*; complex: *ἐργ-ον*, *weorc*; *πυργ-ος*, *burh*; *via*, *weg*; *vir*, *wer*. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning; as, *heofon*, *heofone* *heaven*, *mann*, *manna* *man*, *πεῶν*, *πεῶνα* *slave*; some with; as, *μῦθ* *month* (*animate*), *μῦθα* *mouth* (*inanimate*), see List III. above; *lufa* and *lufe* are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for *love*, *affection* (*amor*), the latter for *love*, *sake* (*gratia*): *Godes lufu* *love of God*; for *somes godes lufan* *for the sake of some good*.

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. it is derived from it; the ablative next as in some words derived from the accus.; and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, as being in neuters and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c.: in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, *twá*, *bá*, and *preo* are noticeable exceptions.

Page 13.—The plural ending *-an* (G. *-en*) became in time *-en* which in *ox-en* (*ox-an*) is yet rightly used; *hos-en* (*hós-a*), and P. *hous-en* (*hús*), and *furz-en* (*fyr-s-as*) are wrong. To *brethr-en* (*bróðr-u*),

and *childr-en* (cildr-u) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *child-er* still in P. use: see p. 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. küch-en) whence *chick* is shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *vis-en*; see p. 68.

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined; as *Gota Goth*, *Beda*, *Anna*: *Europa* follows the L. making accus. *Europam*; dat. and gen. *Europe* (the medieval form of *Europæ*); *Donua Danube* (G. *Donau*; well called by Milton *Donaw*), and sometimes *Sicilia* and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a; all nouns in -a being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in -u, (II. 3. or III. 3.); as, *Mæð-hild*, *Rád-gifu*, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgiva*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative; as, *He ge-seáh Simonem he saw Simon*. *Fram Decapoli from Decapolis*. *Iacobus Zebedei James (son) of Zebedee*. *Lazarus gá út! Lazarus come forth!* Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II. 2., as, *Salomon*, *Salomones*, *Salomone*; *Petrus*, *Petre*, and the like.

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as *herz-ens*, *nam-ens*, *will-ens*, *lieb-ens* (-würdig), are derived from the Goth. gen., *hairt-ins*, *nam-ins* (L. nom-inis) *wilj-ins* &c. A. S. *heort-an*, *nam-an*, *will-an*, *luf-an*. *Glaub-ens* is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in -en, *glauben*, (complex) Goth. *ga-láubeina*, A. S. (simple) *ge-leáfa*. *Herz-e* (Goth. *hairto*, A. S. *heorte*) is still in P. and poetical use: other G. simple nouns, as *heri* (A. S. *hearra*) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as *auf erden* (*on earth*), *vor freuden* (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in -n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed.

Page 15.—Nouns in -e (II. 2.) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, *end-eas*, *end-eum* &c.

Freónd and *feónd* being originally participials, derived, the former from *freógan* (G. *freien*) *to court, honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to *fáh hostile* (whence *foe*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II. 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that æ is changed to a; otherwise not; as, wæstm, pl. wæstmas (*fruit*) æcer, pl. æcceras, æcras: thus too in adjectives; smæl, þæt smale, smālor, but fæst, þæt fæste, fæstor and the like.

Feld and ford originally belonged to III. 2; feld-u, ford-u like sun-u

Page 17.—Hand belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in -u hand-u.

Page 20.—Wædla *poor* hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (I. 2.) a *beggar*; wædlian to *beg*. þearfa *poor* is commonly if not always used as a noun—a *poor man*. wana *wanting* seems indeclinable.

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings -or, -ost (-oste), and -er, -est (-este) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former oftener follow a, o, and u, the latter e, i, or y. see addit. note on p. 42

Page 25.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in -e and -lice (p. 70.) as lang-e, lang-lice, strang-e, strang-lice, hræd-lice, heāg-e, heā-lice, eāð-e, eāðe-lice, sceort-lice, soft-e, yfel-e, lytl-e.

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *wors-er* for *worse* is. *Lest* is (þý-)læs(-þe), t being added as in *against* &c. The ending -mest has no connexion with mæst *most*, though it also has become -most: our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative.

Page 27.—Ye is therefore the true nom., you the accus. &c. "If any man say ought to you, ye shall say."

Page 29.—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

Page 30.—*Þissere* and *þissera* are older forms than *þisse* and *þissa*.

Page 32.—The *á-* in *á-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73); *á* is *ever*, *aye*, *äu*, Goth. *áiw-*, G. *je*, whence *aiwv*, Goth. *áiws*, L. *ævum*, *aye*, *eternity*. *Á'-* or *æg-* (p. 66) gives a *general* sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand some one*; *á-hwær some-, any-, every-where*, *á-hwænne some time, any time*, P. *some-when, any-when*: with the negative it becomes *ná never, no*; *ná-hwider no-whither*: *ná-wiht* is more regular than *nán-wiht*. *A'wðer* and *áðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *á-hwæðer*, and = *ægðer*, *æg-hwæðer*: *náwðer* is *ná-hwæðer* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nother* *neither* has arisen from *either*.

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *án*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *sum* is commoner for the article than *án*.

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called *Simple* from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or *Weak* as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed *Complex* from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or *Strong*, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *ceall-ian*, *καλ-ειν*, *cal-are to call*; *tem-ian*, *δαμ-αιν*, *dom-are to tame*; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere to shine*: complex; *graf-an*, *γραφ-ειν*; *to (en-)grave, write*; *brec-an*, *ῥηγ-ειν*, *frang-ere, to break*; *ter-an*, *τερ-ειν*, *ter-ere to tear* &c.; *flów-an*, *flu-ere to flow*; *drag-an*, *τραχ-ειν*, *to draw, drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usually called regular, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs have in course of time become simple, and this change is still going on. Thus *bake, sleep, leap, sweep, weep, fure, wield, fold, step, starve, creep, reek, lie*

creak, dice, shove, row, flow, swallow, brook &c. from A. S. complex forms have become simple: others are in a fair way to do so, retaining only a complex imperf. or part. past, some of which are either gone or going out of use; as, *hung, hove, stood, shove, clomb, glode, bet, shod; wazen, hevon, laden, graven, shapen, washen, strewn, holpen, bursten, foughten, swollen* &c.

G. *walten* (*to rule*), *wallen* (*to boil*), *sähen* (*to sow*), *krähen* (*to crow*), *kauen* (*to chew*), *wachen* (*to watch*), *wathen* (*to wade*), *reuen* (*to rue*), *lachen* (*to laugh*), as also most of the E. synonyms, have become simple; others, as *backen* (*to bake*), *hauen* (*to hew*), *sieden* (*to seethe*) &c. are in the transition state. A few E. verbs from A. S. I. 2., and I. 3. have assumed imperfects (but not participles past) of a *seeming* complex form; as, *meet, met; lead, led; send, sent; build, built*; from *métan, lédan, sendan, byldan*. A very few A. S. verbs have both forms without change of meaning; as, *bringan; bringe, bróhte, bróht, or bringe, brang, brungen*; the latter however is rare.

Page 38.—Attention should be paid to the quantity of the complex or strong imperfects, both as compared with that of the present, and as to whether it is long throughout, or short throughout, or short in the first and third persons singular, and long in the 2nd, and the whole plural, or long in the first and third pers., and short in the rest. Thus II. 2. from presents some short, some long, and II. 3. from presents all short, make it long throughout, except some doubtful in the former; as, *healde; heóld, heólde* &c. *drage; dróh* &c. III. 1. has the present short, and the imperf. short throughout with a change of vowel; *binde; band, bunde, band, bundon*. II. 1. short in the pres. has the imperf. short and long; *brece; bræc, bræce, bræc, bræcon*; except the f. w in ea; as, *geaf, geafe* &c., together with *com, come* &c., and *nam, name* &c. which are short throughout. III. 2. and III. 3. with long pres. have the imperf. long and short with a change of vowel; *drife; dráf, drife, dráf, drifon; clúfe; cleáf, clufe, cleáf, clufon*. Complex participles past are all short but some of II. 2.

Page 41.—Verbs in *-igan* (for *-ian*) are often conjugated regularly

ject: *seccan to say, tell, bodian to preach, announce, beóðan to offer, and-wyrdan, and-swarian to answer, gifan to give, for-gifan to give away, forgive, syllan to give, sell* (of which examples need not be given), *wið-metan to compare, measure with, ge-an-lícian to liken, make like; yrsian to be angry with, sē-filhan to approach, apply to, wísian (wissian) to guide, direct, fore-wesan (L. præ-esse) to govern, be over, be-sárgian to pity, be sorry for, have a dative of the near object; losian to be lost, escape from, one of the person affected; as, Hire fæder is wið-meten fyrd-lícum truman her going is compared to an army on the march. Ic eom yslum and axum ge-an-lícod I am made like cinders and ashes. Se-þe yrsað his bróðer he that is angry with his brother. Nó ic him þæs georne sē-fealh I did not therefore willingly approach him. Ðæt hīg mihton þam folce wel wissian that they might guide the people well. Mid-þý heó þá feala geara þissum mynstre fore-wæs when she then many years had ruled this convent. Ðá be-sárgode he þære sorh-fullan méder then pitied he the sorrowful mother. Him losade án seeáp he had lost one sheep.*

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative; as, *Démað rihtne dóm judge right judgment.*

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflexive way with the pronoun in the accusative: *ge-biddan to pray, warnian to be ware, belgan to be angry, ge-wraðian to be wroth; as, Donne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest. Warniað eow fram mannum be ware of men. Warniað wið þa bóceras be ware of the scribes. Ðá bealh he hine then was he angry. Ge belgað wið me ye are angry with me. Ðá ge-wraðede hine se arce-biscop Landfranc then was the archbishop Lanfranc wroth.*

Likewise some compounds of *seón*; as, *Hine &c. for-seón (G. sich ver-sehen) to err, commit an oversight, sin. Gif he hine under-bæc be-sáwe if he should look back.*

has hái-háit, láí-láik, ráí-ród from háitan- &c. Some only alter the vowel. as sceape, sceóp, where the Goth. has sái-skáp.

Page 54.—Verbs in -án form their part. prés. in -ánde; sleán, sleánde.

Page 58.—Wríðan is an exception to the general rule that complex verbs change ð into d in the 2nd pers. sing., and in the plural of the imperf., and in the past part.: see cweðan p. 50, weorðan p. 57, and seóðan p. 60, which are all regular.

Page 62.—Complex participles past sometimes agree like adjectives with a noun, sometimes do not; as, Ða þing þe him ge-sende wáron *the things that were sent him*. Seó óðre naman was Tate háten *who by another name was hight Tate*.

The part. past in the pluperfect is sometimes governed in the accus. by the auxiliary hæbban, as, Ðá híg hæfdon hyra lof-sang ge-sungenne *when they had sung their song of praise*.

Page 63.—Un- sometimes, as in G., is not merely negative, but implies badness; un-þeáw *bad habit*, un-weder (G. un-ge-witter) *storm, bad weather*.

The prefix to- must be carefully distinguished from the preposition tó in composition; as, to-gán *to go asunder, separate*, tó-gán *to go to*; G. zer-gehen, zu-gehen: to- implies *division, dispersion of parts*, and hence often *destruction*.

Page 64.—For- gives in general a negative or bad sense, or is intensive, much like kara-; déman *to judge*, for-déman *to condemn*, κρινειν, kara-κρινειν, G. ur-theilen, ver-urtheilen; bernan *to burn*, for-bernán *to burn up, consume*, καειν, kara-καειν, G. brennen, ver-brennen; dón *to do, make*, for-dón *to un-do, ruin, destroy*; scyppan *to form*, for-scyppan *to trans-form, de-form*; for-fela *very many*. This prefix must not be confounded with the prepositions for and fore; (probably of the same origin, = L. pro); thus for-seón is *to over-look, de-spise*, G. ver-sehen; for-seón, fore-seón *to fore-see*, G. vor-sehen; for-gán *to for-go, do without*,

perish, G. *ver-gehen*, L. *per-ire*; *fore-gán* to *fore-go*, *go before*, G. *vor-gehen*, L. *præ-ire*. It is as wrong to write *fore-go* for *for-go*, as *fore-give* for *for-give*.

And- answers closely to *ἀντι*, denoting opposition, reciprocity &c.; and-*saca* *denier*; and-*wyrdan*, and-*swarian*, *ἀντ-ᾶρειν* to *answer*; and-*wlitan*, *ἀντι βλέπειν*, to *gaze at*, *look in the face*.

The prefix *ge-* is in A. S. used oftener and more indiscriminately than in any kindred language old or new. Though originally conveying no notion of past time, it seems gradually to have acquired it, and to have become a kind of syllabic augment to imperfects, but especially to participles past, as in Dutch and German. In the formation of English it was by degrees dropt before all but participles past, where it first became *i-* or *y-*, and has since been lost altogether, surviving only as *a-* in some P. words. In G. and D. it is still in use before nouns, adjectives &c., but in general with a distinct effect on their meaning, referible to its original collective force. A. S. *ge-* sometimes denotes *the result of doing a thing*; as, *Ge-slóh þín fæder fêhða mæste* *thy father by striking avenged the greatest of feuds*. His *feorh ge-faran oððe ge-irnan* to *save his life by going or running (to a sanctuary)*.

Page 65.—The prefix *or-* (left out in the right place) denotes want of a thing; as, *or-mæte* *im-mense*, *measure-less*, *or-trúwian* to *de-spair*, *or-sorh* *care-less*, *se-cure*: it must not be confounded with *or-* in *or-eald* *very old*, (G. *ur-alt*), from *or*, *ord* *beginning*, *point*, connected with L. *or-ior*, *or-igo* &c.

The ending *-el*, *-ol*, answers sometimes to L. *-ul-um*; *gyrd-el*, L. *cing-ulum*, *girdle*.

The primary meaning of *-ing* is *young*, and hence it forms patronymics, and terms of contempt &c.: *-ling* has been supposed to be derived from *-ing*.

Page 66.—Other feminines in *-en* are *menn-en* from *man*, G. *mann*, *männin*; *gyd-en* from *god*, G. *gott*, *gött-in*, D. *god*, *god-in*: in *-e*; *fyl-e*, *filly*, from *fol-a* *foal*; *wale* from *wealh* or *wala*, *Celt*, *stranger*; *webb-e* (or *webb-estre* *web-ster*), from *webb-a* *weaver*.

The ending *-estre* (like D. *-ster*) is feminine only, and the notion of thus forming nouns of contempt &c., as *pun-ster*, *trick-ster*, *road-ster* is modern.

The ending *dóm* is properly a noun (II. 2.) *doom*, *judgment*, *authority*, *dignity*: *hád* is also a noun (II. 2.) *state*, *condition*, *rank*, *Holy Orders*.

Page 67.—*-scipe* (not occurring alone) is related to *scapan*, (*scapan*), *to shape*, *form*, *create*, and denotes *form*, *mode*, *condition*; *land-scape*, or *land-skip*, (*land-scipe*) G. *land-schaft*, D. *land-schap*, should in rule be *land-ship*, unless borrowed, like a few other words, directly from the Dutch.

The adjective ending *-ig* answers to *ακ-ος*, L. *-ic-us*.

Page 68.—A. S. *-isc* had often a bad sense, which E., G., and D. *-ish*, *-isch*, *-sch* almost always have, except when added to local names; the three former often contrast with *-lic*, *-like* or *-ly*, G. *-lich*, which convey a good or indifferent notion; as, *folc-isc vulgar* (Chaucer has *pepi-ish*), *folc-lic popular*; *cild-isc child-ish*, G. *kind-isch*, *cild-lic child-like*, G. *kind-lich*; compare also *mann-ish*, *man-like*, *man-ly*, G. *männ-isch*, *männ-lich*; *woman-ish*, *woman-ly*, G. *weib-isch*, *weib-lich*; *girl-ish*, *maiden-ly* &c.

While *-ol* (*-ul*) answers in form to L. *-ul-us*, in sense it is more like *-ax*, commonly denoting a wrong propensity; as, *sprec-ol*, *cwid-ol*, L. *loqu-ax*, *dic-ax talkative*, *evil-tongued*; *et-ol*, L. *ed-ax greedy*. Sometimes as in *sóð-sag-ol truth-telling*, *deóp-þanc-ol deep-thinking*, it expresses a good quality.

-en (G. *-ern*, *-en*) usually denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *stán-en of stone*, G. *stein-ern*; *treów-en treen*, *wood-en*; *gyld-en gold-en*, G. *gold-en*; *lin-en lin-en*, *of lin or flax*, G. *lein-en*; from *stán*, *treów*, *gold*, *lin*. Several words thus formed are now obsolete; *ston-en*, *brick-en* &c. are still in P. use.

-cund answers to L. *-cund-us*.

Some adjectives are formed in *-ed* or *-d* like simple participles past; as, *ge-hyrned horn-ed*, (G. *ge-hörn-t*); *ge-sceód shod* (G. *ge-schuh-t*); the rest of the verb, if any, is here wanting.

Page 69.—c-, -n-, -s-, in these and the like verbs represent lost syllables; therefore *swin-s-ian* (*to make melody*) is no exception to the rule against ns in the same syllable; see p. 2. n. 1.

The verbal endings -ian and -an (-*ian*, G. and D. -*an*) became in time -en and -e, the latter of which has in many cases been dropt, in all has lost its sound. Such verbs as *whit-en*, *black-en* are of modern use, *to white* and the like being the older form.

Page 71.—Other adverbs in common use are: *á aye, always*, *æfre* (G. and D. immer) *ever*, *næfre* (G. and D. nimmer) *never*, *ædre* *straightway*, *recene* *instantly*, *eft-sona* *eft-soon*, *forth-with*, *endemes* *at length*, *þær-rihte* (*forð-rihte*) *forthwith*, *elles* *else*, *other-wise*, *elles-hwider* *else-whither*, *ellor* *elsewhere*, *þus* (D. *du*) *thus*, *georne* (G. *gerne*) *earnestly*, *willingly*, *þearle* *very*, *exceedingly*, *geara* *well*, *accurately*, (*lyt*)-*hwon* *a little* (S. *a wheen*), *hugu* (*hwegu*), *hwæt*-(*hwylc*)-*hugu* &c. *somewhat*, *a little*, *þances* *gratis*, *áignes þances* *of one's own accord*, *his* &c. *willan*, *un-willan* *with*, *against his* &c. *will*, *semninga* *suddenly*, *hrædinga* *quickly*, *áninga* (*éninga*) *alone*, *only*, *on bæc-ling* *backward*. *Sona* is construed with a genitive; as, *Sona þæs* *soon after that*. *Sona þæs wintres* *early in the winter*.

Page 72.—It seems likely that the first part of the word *Ozena-ford* is not from *oxa* *ox*, but from the Celtic root meaning *water*, *river*, (A. S. *wos* is *ooze*, *liquid*) which appears in *Ouse* (many) *Isis*, *Rx*, *Ax*, *Usk*, *Esk*, *Oise*, *Aisne*, *Yssel*, *Oxus*, and so many other names of rivers; and this is confirmed by *Ousn-ey* in the neighbourhood. *Ford of oxen* is however the strict meaning of the A. S. name, and doubtless the one then attached to it; *Βορ-πορος*, *Schwein-furt*, *Swin-ford* and the like supply fair analogies.

Ofer- sometimes conveys the same idea as *for-*; *ofer-gitan* (= *for-gitan*) *to forget*. *ofer-hycgan* = *for-hycgan* *to despise*.

Of- beside its intensive force (p. 105. n. 2.) sometimes has a bad one; as, *me þincð* *me thinks*, *me of-þincð* *it repenteth me*, *I take it ill*.

Page 73.—Our prefix *a-* has in general sprung from the A. S. *on-* (*an-*, *a-*), and *on* is still sometimes used for it; as, *a-float*, A. S. *on-flote*; *a-live*, A. S. *on-life* (G. *am leben*); *a-two* (*in-two*), A. S. *on-twá*; *a-feared*, A. S. *a-fered*; O. *on flote*, *on life*, *on two*, also *on sleep*, *on row* &c. now *a-sleep* &c.; we yet say *on board*, or *a-board*, *on fire*, or *a-fire* and the like: see also p. 69—71, 73.

In some words *a-* is from A. S. *of-*; as, *of-dúne* (*a-dúne*, *a-dún*) *a-down*, *down* (= G. *berg-ab*); *of-þyrst* *a-thirst*; we say *too of kin* or *a-kin*; it is therefore not unlikely that in other cases A. S. *a-* may, as the sense would imply, have sprung from *of-*; thus *a-faran* *to depart*, *a-wendan* *to turn away*, *a-weorpan* *to cast off*, answer to G. *ab-fahren*, and G. and D. *ab-wenden*, *af-wenden*, *ab-werfen*, *af-werpen*: so *ἀπο, ἀπ'* became L. *ab*, and that in time *a*. Once or twice E. *a-* is from A. S. *ge-*; as *ge-líc* (O. *y-like*), *a-like*; *ge-mang* (O. *e-mong*), *a-mong*.

Page 77.—Adjectives also take an abl. or dat. of the cause &c., which commonly stands first; as, *Iú-dædum fáh stained with (my) former deeds*. *Wundum wérig weary with wounds*.

Likewise of the person &c. by whom the action implied is done; as, *His freóndum or-wéne despaired of by his friends*. *Wurð-full þám cyningum to be honoured by kings*. *Un-a-secgend-líc énigum unspeakable by any*.

Adjectives in general govern the object to which they have relation in the dative; as, *Ic eom ge-trýwe mínor hláf-orde I am true to my lord*. *He wæs me yrre he was angry with me*. *Dryhten wæs þám folce gram (the) Lord was wroth with the people*.

Adjectives denoting nearness also govern the dative; as, *A'n biscop þe him þá hendest wæs a bishop that was then nearest (handiest) to him*.

Some adverbs take the same case as the adjectives whence they are formed: *Nénig him ge-líce þæt dón mehte none could do that like him*.

Page 79.—The following verbs also govern the dative of the far ob-

ject: *secgan to say, tell, bodian to preach, announce, beóðan to offer, and-wyrdan, and-swarian to answer, gifan to give, for-gifan to give away, forgive, syllan to give, sell* (of which examples need not be given), *wið-metan to compare, measure with, ge-an-lícian to liken, make like; yrsian to be angry with, æt-filhan to approach, apply to, wísian (wissian) to guide, direct, fore-wesan (L. præ-esse) to govern, be over, be-sárgian to pity, be sorry for, have a dative of the near object; losian to be lost, escape from, one of the person affected; as, Hire fær is wið-meten fyrd-lícum truman her going is compared to an army on the march. Ic eom yslum and axum ge-an-lícod I am made like cinders and ashes. Se-þe yrsað his bréðer he that is angry with his brother. Nó ic him þæs georne æt-fealh I did not therefore willingly approach him. Þæt híg mihton þám folce wel wissian that they might guide the people well. Mid-þý heó þá feala geara þissum mynstre fore-wæs when she then many years had ruled this convent. Þá be-sárgode he þære sorh-fullan méder then pitied he the sorrowful mother. Him losade án seeáp he had lost one sheep.*

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative; as, *Démað rihtne dóm judge right judgment.*

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflexive way with the pronoun in the accusative: *ge-biddan to pray, warnian to be ware, belgan to be angry, ge-wraðian to be wroth; as, Þonne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest. Warniað eów fram mannum be ware of men. Warniað wið þa bóceras be ware of the scribes. Þá bealh he hine then was he angry. Ge belgað wið me ye are angry with me. Þá ge-wraðede hine se arce-biscop Landfranc then was the archbishop Lanfranc wroth.*

Likewise some compounds of *seón*; as, *Hine &c. for-seón (G. sich ver-sehen) to err, commit an oversight, sin. Gif he hine under-bæc be-sáwe if he should look back.*

Page 81.—3.—Wealdan, on-fón, éhtan, bídan, and earn-ian sometimes govern the accusative.

Page 83.—On-þracian *to dread, feel horror at* governs the genitive like on-drædan; as, An-þraciende þæs un-ge-limpes *feeling horror at the misfortune.*

Page 87.—Be and tó sometimes govern the ablative; as, Be þý mæg ælc mon wítan *by that may each man know.* Tó-þý-þæt (= tó-þón-þæt) *in order that.* Tó-hwý *why?*

As æt is sometimes *to*, so is tó sometimes *at*; the two are now and then confounded in E., and G. zu stands for both. Tó and æt (the latter in composition often) sometimes mean *from*, the former especially with wilnian and sécan; as, Ealle tó þe ætes wilniað *all from thee desire food.* Manna ge-hwylc se-þe séceð tó him *every man that seeketh from him.* He þæt ful ge-þeah æt Wealh-þeón *he took the cup from (at the hand of) Wealh-theó.*

Tó meaning *motion to*, has sometimes, though seldom, an accusative: He fór tó Samariam þæt land *he went to the land of Samaria.*

Page 88.—Tó-emnes (a rare word) rather *by, along-side, over-against* than *along*, is from efen (efn, emn) *even, equal*; on-efn (-emn) is the same; Him on-efn ligeð ealdor-ge-winna *by him lieth (his) deadly foe.* Emn-, em- are common in composition; emn-lang (G. eben (so) lang) *of the same length*; em-leóf (G. eben (so) lieb) *equally dear*; em-þeów *fellow-slave.*

Page 90.—Innon, úton, and úppon should not be divided, -on (-an) being here only an ending and not the preposition on, serving in the two last to change the adverb into a preposition.

Page 93.—Þenden *while* sometimes has a subjunctive; as, Þenden hit hát sý *while it be hot.*

Page 95.—For-standan (or fore-standan) *to defend, stand before*, likewise for-standan (G. ver-stehen) *to understand* govern the accusative; as, Hine God for-stód him God defended.

Page 96.—Other conjunctions are swá-same-swá *the same as—, in like manner as—*, ná-læs þæt án ac— *not (that) only but—*, nates-hwón *by no means*, uóht-þón-læs *never-(nought)-theless*, gea *yea*, ná *nay*, gese *yes*, nese *no*, næs (nas) *not*, huru *moreover, chiefly*, huru-þinga *at least*, þæs-þe *since, after that, because*, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) *hwy, þæs(-for) for that, therefore*, gen, gena *yet*.

Comp. οὐκ ἔχουεν εἰ μὴ—we have (not) but—, one only of the many instances of likeness between the Gr. and A. S. syntax.

Weorðe too may be either expressed or understood; as, Wá (weorðe) þám men! *wo worth the man!*

Page 97.—Lo! has no more to do with *look* than O. gíf has with gífan: our vulgar *law!* and *lawk!* may also be derived from lá!

Page 98.—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say; this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfric was a common name; among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch.

Page 133.—Teóhhian (from teóh, p. 152. n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boëthius, where its meaning is not very clear.

Page 140.—Tó- in tó-geanes sometimes does not rime (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations: to- on the other hand never rimes.

THE END.

CORRECTIONS.

- ge 29, for usser, usse, ussum, usses, ussa read ússer, úsae &c.
 51, l. 3, for hó read hange, hó.
 52, for geong read geóng.
 66, l. 12, for þeow, þeowen read þéow, þéowen, and accent þéow,
 and its derivatives elsewhere.
 71, l. 3, for niwan read níwan, and accent níwe elsewhere.
 do. l. 19, for sic-treow read síc-treów.
 78, l. 8, for Oðer-healf read O'ðer-healf.
 79, l. 3, 4, for axian read áxian, and accent the verb elsewhere.
 83, l. 11, for ehtan read éhtian or éhtan, and accent elsewhere.
 90, for úpp-on, inn-on, út-on read úppon &c.
 100, for aþena, aþenede, aþenian read a-þena, a-þenede, a-þenian.
 101, for lociað, locian read lóciað, lócian, and accent elsewhere.
 102, for un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian read un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian.
 103, l. 1, for ge-drefede read ge-dréfede.
 105, l. 14, for sacerdra read sacerda.
 109, last but one, for sód-lice read sóð-lice.
 115, note 14, for herd read heed.
 118, note 2, for (II. 1.) read (II. 2.)
 126, note 9, for for líðan read for-líðan.
 133, l. 8, for moton read móton.
 do. for teohhiað, teohhian read teóhhiað, teóhhian.
 134, note 1, for Ut-a-springan read U't-a-springan.
 138, l. 5, for boded read bade.
 143, for cyððe, cyððu read cýððe, cýððu.
 168, l. 20, for birne read byrne (birne).
 172, l. 4, for she read the, who.
 180, l. 23, for G. ans read Goth. ans.
 183, l. 14, for keaven read heaven.
 188, l. 1, for imper. fyligde read imperf. fyligde.

Page 95.—For-standan (or fore-standan) *to defend, stand before*, likewise for-standan (G. ver-stehen) *to understand* govern the accusative; as, Hine God for-stód him God defended.

Page 96.—Other conjunctions are swá-same-swá *the same as—, in like manner as—*, ná-læs þæt án ac— *not (that) only but—*, nates-hwón *by no means*, nóht-þón-læs *never-(nought)-theless*, gea *yea*, ná *nay*, gese *yes*, nese *no*, næs (nas) *not*, huru *moreover, chiefly*, huru-þinga *at least*, þæs-þe *since, after that, because*, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) *hwy, þæs(-for) for that, therefore*, gen, gena *yet*.

Comp. οὐκ ἔχομεν εἰ μὴ—we have (not) but—, one only of the many instances of likeness between the Gr. and A. S. syntax.

Weorðe too may be either expressed or understood; as, Wá (weorðe) þám men! *wo worth the man!*

Page 97.—Lo! has no more to do with *look* than O. *gif* has with *gifan*: our vulgar *law*! and *lawk*! may also be derived from lá!

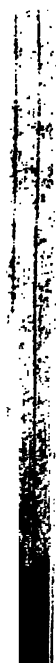
Page 98.—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say; this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfric was a common name; among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch.

Page 133.—Teóhhian (from teóh, p. 152. n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boëthius, where its meaning is not very clear.

Page 140.—Tó- in tó-geanes sometimes does not rime (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations: to- on the other hand never rimes.

CORRECTIONS.

- ge 29, *for usser, usse, ussum, usses, ussa read ússer, ússe &c.*
51, l. 3, *for hó read hange, hó.*
52, *for geong read geóng.*
66, l. 12, *for þeow, þeowen read þéow, þéowen, and accent þéow,*
and its derivatives elsewhere.
71, l. 3, *for niwan read níwan, and accent níwe elsewhere.*
do. l. 19, *for fíc-treow read fíc-treów.*
78, l. 8, *for Oðer-healf read O'ðer-healf.*
79, l. 3, 4, *for axian read áxian, and accent the verb elsewhere.*
83, l. 11, *for ehtan read éhtian or éhtan, and accent elsewhere.*
90, *for úpp-on, inn-on, út-on read úppon &c.*
100, *for aþena, aþenede, aþenian read a-þena, a-þenede, a-þenian.*
101, *for lociað, locian read lóciað, lócian, and accent elsewhere.*
102, *for un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian read un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian.*
103, l. 1, *for ge-drefede read ge-dréfede.*
105, l. 14, *for sacerdra read sacerda.*
109, *last but one, for sóð-lice read sóð-lice.*
115, note 14, *for herd read heed.*
118, note 2, *for (II. 1.) read (II. 2.)*
126, note 9, *for for líðan read for-líðan.*
133, l. 8, *for moton read móton.*
do. *for teohhiað, teohhian read teóhhiað, teóhhian.*
134, note 1, *for Ut-a-springan read U't-a-springan.*
138, l. 5, *for boded read bade.*
143, *for cyððe, cyððu read cýððe, cýððu.*
168, l. 20, *for birne read byrne (birne).*
172, l. 4, *for she read the, who.*
180, l. 23, *for G. ans read Goth. ans.*
183, l. 14, *for keaven read heaven.*
188, l. 1, *for imper. fyligde read imperf. fyligde.*



VALUABLE AND INTERESTING BOOKS,

PUBLISHED OR SOLD BY

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,

4, OLD COMPTON STREET, SOHO SQUARE, LONDON.

Philology and Early English Literature.

A Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words, Obsolete Phrases, Proverbs, and Ancient Customs, from the Reign of Edward I. by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, F.R.S., F.S.A., &c. 2 vols. 8vo. containing upwards of 1000 pages, closely printed in double columns, cloth, £2. 2s

This work, which has occupied the Editor some years, is now completed; it contains above 50,000 words (embodying all the known scattered glossaries of the English language) forming a complete key for the reader of the works of our old Poets, Dramatists, Theologians, and other authors whose works abound with allusions, of which explanations are not to be found in ordinary Dictionaries and books of reference. Most of the principal Archaisms are illustrated by examples selected from early inedited MSS. and rare books, and by far the greater portion will be found to be original authorities.

Guide to the Anglo-Saxon Tongue: on the Basis of Professor Rask's Grammar, to which are added Reading Lessons in Verse and Prose, with Notes for the use of Learners, by E. J. VERNON, B.A., Oxon. 12mo. cloth, 5s 6d

"The author of this Guide seems to have made one step in the right direction, by compiling what may be pronounced the best work on the subject hitherto published in England."—*Athenæum*.

"Mr. Vernon has, we think, acted wisely in taking Rask for his model; but let no one suppose from the title that the book is merely a compilation from the work of that philologist. The accidence is abridged from Rask, with constant revision, correction, and modification; but the syntax, a most important portion of the book, is original, and is compiled with great care and skill; and the latter half of the volume consists of a well-chosen selection of extracts from Anglo-Saxon writers, in prose and verse, for the practice of the student, who will find great assistance in reading them from the grammatical notes with which they are accompanied, and from the glossary which follows them. This volume, well studied, will enable any one to read with ease the generality of Anglo-Saxon writers; and its cheapness places it within the reach of every class. It has our hearty recommendation."—*Literary Gazette*.

The Anglo-Saxon Version of the Life of St. Guthlac, Hermit of Croyland. Printed for the first time, from a MS. in the Cottonian Library, with a Translation and Notes by CHARLES WYCLIFFE GOODWIN, M.A., Fellow of Catharine Hall, Cambridge, 12mo. cloth, 5s

An Introduction to Anglo-Saxon Reading; comprising Ælfric's Homily on the Birthday of St. Gregory, with a copious Glossary, &c. by L. LANGLEY, F.L.S. 12mo. cloth, 2s 6d

Compendious Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary, by the Rev. JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D., F.R.S., F.S.A., &c.—Will be ready very shortly.

It will contain all the words of the large octavo edition, with numerous additions, and will be published at a price which will place it within the reach of all who take an interest in the language of their forefathers.

Reliquiæ Antiquæ.—Scraps from Ancient Manuscripts, illustrating chiefly Early English Literature, and the English Language, edited by WRIGHT and HALLIWELL, 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, £2. 2s—reduced to £1. 4s

Containing communications by Ellis, Madden, Hunter, Bruce, Turnbull, Lais Nichols, &c. But very few copies remain. Odd numbers may be had to complete sets at 2s. each.

It contains a large number of pieces in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman, and Early English; it will be found of use to future Philologists, and to all who take an interest in the history of our language and literature.

Popular Treatises on Science, written during the Middle Ages, in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman, and English, 8vo. edited by THOS. WRIGHT, cloth, 4s 6d

Contents:—An Anglo-Saxon Treatise on Astronomy of the TENTH CENTURY, now first published from a MS. in the British Museum, with a translation; *Liure des Creatures*, by Philippe de Thauun, now first printed with a translation, (extremely valuable to the Philologist, as being the earliest specimens of Anglo-Norman remaining, and explanatory of all the symbolical signs in early sculpture and painting); the *Bestiary* of Philippe de Thauun, with a translation; Fragments on Popular Science from the Early English Metrical Lives of the Saints, (the earliest piece of the kind in the English language.)

Anecdota Literaria: A Collection of Short Poems in English, Latin, and French, illustrative of the Literature and History of England in the XIIIth Century; and more especially of the Condition and Manners of the different Classes of Society, by T. WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c. 8vo. cloth, only 250 printed, 7s 6d

Philological Proofs of the original Unity and recent Origin of the Human Race, derived from a Comparison of the Languages of Asia, Europe, Africa, and America, by A. J. JOHNES, 8vo. [cloth, reduced from 12s 6d to 6s

Printed at the suggestion of Dr. Pritchard, to whose works it will be found a useful supplement.

Early Mysteries, and other Latin Poems of the XIIth and XIIIth centuries, edited from original MSS. in the British Museum, and the Libraries of Oxford, Cambridge, Paris, and Vienna, by THOS. WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., 8vo. bds. 4s 6d

"Besides the curious specimens of the dramatic style of Middle-Age Latinity, Mr. Wright has given two compositions in the Narrative Elegiac Verse (a favourite measure at that period), in the *Comœdia Babionis* and the *Geta* of Vitalis Blesensis, which form a link of connexion between the Classical and Middle-age Literature; some remarkable Satirical Rhymes on the people of Norfolk, written by a Monk of Peterborough, and answered in the same style by John of St. Omer; and lastly, some sprightly and often graceful songs, from a MS. in the Arundel Collection, which afford a very favourable idea of the Lyric Poetry of our clerical forefathers."—*Gentleman's Mag.*

An Essay on the Origin, Progress, and Decline of Rhyming Latin Verse, with many specimens, by SIR ALEX. CROKE, poet 8vo. cloth, 7s 6d—reduced to 3s

"This is a clever and interesting little volume on an attractive subject, the leisure work of a scholar and man of taste."—*British Critic.*

On the Origin and Formation of the Romance Languages; containing an examination of M. Raynouard's Theory on the Relation of the Italian, Spanish, Provençal, and French, to the Latin, by GEO. CORNEWALL LEWIS, 8vo. cloth, 12s—reduced to 7s 6d



biography of Joseph Lister, of Bradford, in
shire, to which is added a contemporary account of the Defence of
ford, and Capture of Leeds by the Parliamentarians in 1642, edited by
MAS WRIGHT, 8vo. only 250 copies printed, cloth, 4s

Letters of Mrs. Piozzi, written when she was
ty, to the handsome Actor, William Augustus Conway, aged Twenty-
1, 8vo. sewed, 2s

— written at three, four, and five o'clock (in the morning) by an Octogenary pen,
(as Mrs. Lee says) twenty-six years old, and as H. L. P. feels it to be, *all your*
Letter V. 3rd Feb. 1820.

ction of Letters on Scientific Subjects, illustra-
of the Progress of Science in England temp. Elizabeth to Charles II.
1 by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. cloth, 3s
prising letters of Digges, Dee, Tycho Brahe, Lower, Harriott, Lydyat, Sir W.
ir C. Cavendish, Blancker, Pell, &c.; also the autobiography of Sir Samuel
from a MS. in Lambeth Palace, Nat. Tarpoley's Corrector Analyticus, &c.
Subscribers £1.

ot among the Bishops; or a Terrible *Tempest*
Sea of Canterbury, set forth in lively emblems to please the judicious
er, by THOMAS STIRBY, 1641, 18mo. (*a satire on Abp. Laud*), four
curious woodcut emblems, cloth, 3s
cainile of the very rare original edition, which sold at Bindley's sale for £18.

otheca Madrigaliana.—A Bibliographical Ac-
of the Musical and Poetical Works published in England during the
enth and Seventeenth Centuries, under the titles of Madrigals, Ballets,
i, Canzonets, &c. &c. by Edward F. Rimbault, LL.D., F.S.A., 8vo.
5s

records a class of books left undescribed by Ames, Herbert, and Dibdin, and
a most valuable Catalogue of the Lyrical Poetry of the age to which it refers.

was "Jack Wilson" the Singer of Shake-
e's Stage? An attempt to prove the identity of this person with John
n, Dr. of Musick in the University of Oxford, A.D. 1644, by E. F.
AULT, LL.D. 8vo. 1s

ular Poetry, Stories, and Superstitions.

Nursery Rhymes of England, collected chiefly
Oral Tradition, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL. The Fourth Edition,
red, with 38 Designs by W. B. SCOTT, *Director of the School of*
m, Newcastle-on-Tyne, 12mo. in very richly illuminated cloth, gilt
r, 4s 6d

ustrations! And here they are; clever pictures, which the three-year olds under-
ore their A, B, C, and which the fifty-three-year olds like almost as well as the
-Literary Gazette.

e are persuaded that the very rudest of these jingles, tales, and rhymes, possess
Imagination-nourishing power; and that in infancy and early childhood a
s of ancient nursery lore is worth whole cartloads of the wise saws and modern
which are now as duly and carefully concocted by experienced litterateurs, into
re tales for the spelling-book. These works of English literature are of great value for the reading public.
is worthy of the attention of the regular anti-*quarian* and the *Mag.*

derful Disc- the W- of Margaret
Flo- (Belvoir), executed
16- destruction of Lord
in record.

An Archæological Index to Remains of Antiquity

of the Celtic, Romano-British and Anglo-Saxon Periods, by JOHN YOUNG AKERMAN, F.S.A., in 1 vol. 8vo. *illustrated with numerous engravings comprising upward of five hundred objects, cloth, 15s*

This work, though intended as an introduction and a guide to the study of our antiquities, will it is hoped also prove of service, as a book of reference to the practical Archæologist. The contents are as follows:

PART I. CELTIC PERIOD.—Tumuli, or Barrows and Cairns.—Cromlechs.—Sepulchral Caves.—Rocking Stones.—Stone Circles, etc. etc.—Objects discovered in Celtic Sepulchres.—Urns.—Beads.—Weapons.—Implements, etc.

PART II. ROMANO-BRITISH PERIOD.—Tumuli of the Roman-British Period.—Burial Places of the Romans.—Pavements.—Camps.—Villas.—Sepulchral Monuments.—Sepulchral Inscriptions.—Dedicatory Inscriptions.—Commemorative Inscriptions.—Altars.—Urns.—Glass Vessels.—Fibulae.—Armilla.—Coins.—Coin-Moulds, etc. etc.

PART III. ANGLO-SAXON PERIOD.—Tumuli.—Detailed List of Objects discovered in Anglo-Saxon Barrows.—Urns.—Swords.—Spears.—Knives.—Umbones of Shields.—Buckles.—Fibulae.—Bullae.—Hair Pins.—Beads, etc. etc. etc.

The ITINERARY of ANTONINUS (as far as relates to Britain). The Geographical Table of PTOLEMY, the NOTITIA, and the ITINERARY of RICHARD of CIRENCESTER, together with a classified Index of the contents of the ARCHÆOLOGIA (Vols. I. to XXI.) are given in an Appendix.

Vestiges of the Antiquities of Derbyshire, and the Sepulchral Usages of its Inhabitants, from the most remote ages to the Reformation, by THOMAS BATEMAN, Esq. of Yolgrave, 8vo. *profusely illustrated with woodcuts, cloth, £1. 1s*

Notitia Britannicæ, or an Inquiry concerning the Localities, Habits, Condition, and Progressive Civilization of the Aborigines of Britain; to which is appended a brief Retrospect of the Results of their Intercourse with the Romans, by W. D. SAULL, F.S.A., F.G.S., 8vo. *engravings, 3s 6d*

A Verbatim Report of the Proceedings at a Special General Meeting of the British Archæological Association, held at the Theatre of the Western Library Institution, 5th March, 1845, T. J. Pettigrew in the Chair. With an Introduction by THOMAS WRIGHT, 8vo. *sewed, 1s 6d*
A succinct history of the division between the Archæological Association and Institute.

British Archæological Association.—A Report of the Proceedings and Excursions of the Members of the British Archæological Association, at the Canterbury Session, Sept. 1844, by A. J. DUNKIN, thick 8vo. *with many engravings, cloth, £1. 1s*

"The volume contains most of the papers entire that were read at the Meeting, and revised by the authors. It will become a scarce book as only 120 were printed; and it forms the first yearly volume of the Archæological Association, or the Archæological Institute."

Coins of the Romans relating to Britain, Described and Illustrated, by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., Secretary to the Numismatic Society, &c. Second edition, greatly enlarged, 8vo. *with plates and woodcuts, 10s 6d*

The "Prix de Numismatique" has just been awarded by the French Institute to the author for this work.

"Mr. Akerman's volume contains a notice of every known variety, with copious illustrations, and is published at very moderate price; it should be consulted, not merely for these particular coins, but also for facts most valuable to all who are interested in the Romano-British history."—*Archæological Journal*.

Ancient Coins of Cities and Princes, Geographically arranged and described, HISPANIA, GALLIA, BRITANNIA, by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., 8vo. *with engravings of many hundred coins from actual examples, cloth, 18s*

John Russell Smith, 4, Old Compton Street, Soho. 7

ismatic Illustrations of the Narrative Portions
of the New Testament, *fine paper, numerous woodcuts from the original*
in various public and private collections, 1 vol. 8vo. cloth, 5s 6d

Coins on the Coinage of the Greeks and Romans,
issued in the University of Oxford, by EDWARD CARDWELL, D.D.,
Principal of St. Alban's Hall, and Professor of Ancient History, 8vo. cloth,
reduced from 8s 6d to 4s

A very interesting historical volume, and written in a pleasing and popular manner.

Numismatics on the Numismatic History of the Ancient
Kingdom of the East Angles, by D. H. HAIGH, royal 8vo. 5 plates, con-
taining numerous figures of coins, sewed, 6s

Hand-Book of English Coins, from the Conquest
to the Victoria, by L. JEWITT, 12mo. 11 plates, cloth, 1s

Heraldry and Topography.

Curiosities of Heraldry, with Illustrations from
English Writers, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, Author of "Essays
on English Surnames;" with *Illuminated Title-page, and numerous engravings*
from designs by the Author, 8vo. cloth, GULES, appropriately orna-
mented, OR, 14s

The present volume is truly a worthy sequel (to the 'SURNAME') in the same
and antiquarian line, blending with remarkable facts and intelligence, such a fund
of anecdote and illustration, that the reader is almost surprised to find that he has
so much, whilst he appeared to be pursuing mere entertainment. The text is so
that we scarcely dream of its sterling value; and it seems as if, in unison with the
s, which so cleverly explain its points and adorn its various topics, the whole
were intended for a relaxation from study, rather than an ample exposition of an
inquiry and universal custom, which produced the most important effect upon the
habits of mankind."—*Literary Gazette*.

Mr. Lower's work is both curious and instructive, while the manner of its treatment
is fitting and popular, that the subject to which it refers, which many have hitherto
good reason to consider meagre and unprofitable, assumes, under the hands of the
author, the novelty of fiction with the importance of historical truth."—*Athenaeum*.

English Surnames. A Series of Essays on Family
Genealogy, Historical, Etymological, and Humorous; with Chapters
on Cresting Arms, Rebuses, and the Roll of Battle Abbey, a List of Latin-
Surnames, &c. by MARK ANTONY LOWER. The second edition,
revised, post 8vo. pp. 292, with 20 woodcuts, cloth, 6s

Those who are curious about their patronymic, it will be found a very instructive
reading volume—mingling wit and pleasantry, with antiquarian research and
real interest.

Index to the Pedigrees and Arms, contained
in the Heralds' Visitations, in the British Museum, alphabetically arranged
according to Counties, 8vo. cloth, 10s 6d

An indispensable work to those engaged in Genealogical and Topographical pursuits,
as a ready clue to the Pedigrees and Arms of nearly 90,000 of the Gentry of
England, their Residences, &c. (distinguishing the different families of the same name in
England), as recorded by the Heralds in their Visitations between the years 1528 to 1686.

History and Antiquities of the Ancient Port and
Town of Rye in Sussex, compiled from Original Documents, by WILLIAM
LOWAY, Esq., thick 8vo. ONLY 200 PRINTED, cloth, £1. 1s

Saint Patrick's Purgatory; an Essay on the Legends of Hell, Purgatory, and Paradise, current during the Middle Ages by THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c. post 8vo. *cloth*, 6s

"It must be observed that this is not a mere account of St. Patrick's Purgatory, but a complete history of the legends and superstitions relating to the subject, from the earliest times, rescued from old MSS. as well as from old printed books. Moreover, it embraces a singular chapter of literary history, omitted by Warton and all former writers with whom we are acquainted; and we think we may add, that it forms the best introduction to *Dan* that has yet been published."—*Literary Gazette*.

"This appears to be a curious and even amusing book on the singular subject of Purgatory, in which the idle and fearful dreams of superstition are shown to be first narrated as tales, and then applied as means of deducing the moral character of the age in which they prevailed."—*Spectator*.

Trial of the Witches at Bury St. Edmunds, before

Sir M. HALE, 1664, with an Appendix by CHARLES CLARK, of Totham Essex, 8vo. 1s

"The most perfect narrative of anything of this nature hitherto extant."—*Preface*.

Account of the Trial, Confession, and Condemnation of Six Witches at Maidstone, 1652; also the Trial and Execution of Three others at Faversham, 1645, 8vo. 1s

These Transactions are unnoticed by all Kentish historians.

An Essay on the Archæology of our Popular Phrases and Nursery Rhymes, by H. B. KER, 2 vols. 12mo. new cloth, 4s (pub. at 12s)

A work which has met with great abuse among the reviewers, but those who are fond of philological pursuits will read it now it is to be had at so very moderate a price, and it really contains a good deal of gossiping matter. The author's attempt is to explain every thing from the Dutch, which he believes was the same language as the Anglo-Saxon.

The Merry Tales of the Wise Men of Gotham, edited by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, Esq. F.S.A., post 8vo. 1s

Miscellanies.

Illustrations of Eating, displaying the Omnivorous Character of Man, and exhibiting the Natives of various Countries at feeding-time, by a BEEF-EATER, fcap. 8vo. with woodcuts, 2s

Elements of Naval Architecture, being a Translation of the third part of CLAIRBOIS' "Traité Élémentaire de la Construction des Vaisseaux," by J. N. STRANGE, Commander, R.N., 8vo. with 5 large folding plates, cloth, 5s

Poems, partly of Rural Life (in National English), by WILLIAM BARNES, Author of "Poems in the Dorset Dialect," 12mo. cloth, 5s

Waifs and Strays (a Collection of Poetry), 12mo. only 250 printed, chiefly for presents, sewed, 1s 6d

Book in the Press.

Facts and Speculations on the History of Playing Cards in Europe, by W. A. CHATTO, Author of the 'History of Wood Engraving, with Illustrations by J. Jackson,' 8vo. profusely illustrated with engravings, both plain and coloured.





